



## Chapter 1 - Swahili Spelling and Pronunciation

### A - THE SWAHILI ALPHABET :

The basic principle which was retained to establish the Swahili alphabet, is that every distinct sound or phoneme should always be transcribed by the same distinct written form (either a single letter, or a cluster of letters), and conversely.

The Swahili alphabet includes :

- 23 single letters : **a, b, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, r, s, t, u, v, w, y, z.**
- The letters q and x are not used. The letter **c**, although present, is never used alone.
- 9 digraphs : **ch, dh, gh, kh, ng', ny, sh, th, ts.**

#### 1. VOWELS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English equivalent
<b>A, a</b>	[a]	<b>baba</b> (father)	<i>far, but cut short</i>
<b>E, e</b>	[e]	<b>debe</b> (gallon)	bed
<b>I, i</b>	[i]	<b>kiti</b> (chair)	kit
<b>O, o</b>	[o]	<b>moto</b> (fire)	off, lot
<b>U, u</b>	[u]	<b>kuku</b> (chicken)	too, to

As you can see in this table, Swahili contains 5 vowels. These are pronounced openly, without diphthongs, like in Spanish or in Italian. They must always be kept short.

#### 2. CLUSTER OF VOWELS :

Unlike in English, two (or three) written vowels that follow each other never merge together to form a single sound. Each keeps its own sound.

For example : **ou** is pronounced "o-oo" as in "go", **au** is pronounced "a-oo" as in "cow", **ei** is pronounced "e-ee" as in

"bay", **ai** is pronounced "a-ee" as in "tie", etc.

In theory, any vowel can be in succession with any other one.

It is not unfrequent to meet two similar vowels in succession : they must be pronounced as one long vowel :

**Naam !** (= Yes ? )

**Juu** (= on top)

**Kuu** (= principal)

**Zii !** (= Down ! )

**Mzee** (= old)

**Jogoo** (= cock)

### 3. SEMIVOWELS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English Equivalent
<b>W, w</b>	[w]	<b>wewe</b> (you)	why, week
<b>Y, y</b>	[j]	<b>yeye</b> (he, she)	yes, you

### 4. SIMPLE CONSONANTS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English Equivalent
<b>B, b</b>	[b]	<b>baba</b> (father)	bad
<b>D, d</b>	[d]	<b>dada</b> (sister)	do
<b>F, f</b>	[f]	<b>kufaa</b> (to suit)	far
<b>G, g</b>	[g]	<b>gari</b> (car)	got
<b>H, h</b>	[h]	<b>haya !</b> (O.K. !)	hat
<b>J, j</b>	[ɕ]	<b>juu</b> (on top)	John
<b>K, k</b>	[k]	<b>kuku</b> (chicken)	kid, cat
<b>L, l</b>	[l]	<b>lala !</b> (sleep !)	lot
<b>M, m</b>	[m]	<b>Mama</b> (mother)	man
<b>N, n</b>	[n]	<b>na</b> (and, with)	no
<b>P, p</b>	[p]	<b>papa</b> (shark)	pot
<b>R, r</b>	[r]	<b>rangi</b> (colour)	rat
<b>S, s</b>	[s]	<b>saa</b> (clock, time)	soap
<b>T, t</b>	[t]	<b>taa</b> (lamp)	toy
<b>V, v</b>	[v]	<b>kuvaa</b> (to wear)	very
<b>Z, z</b>	[z]	<b>-zuri</b> (nice, good)	zoo, easy

While most of the consonants are similar to the English ones and do not offer any difficulty, special care must be paid to :

- **f** : it has always the sound of the "f" in "fat", never that of the "f" in "of".
- **g** : it is always hard like in "got". It should never be pronounced soft like the "g" in "gin".
- **s** : it has always the sound of the "s" in "sad", never that of the "s" in "is" or "easy".

#### 5. COMBINATIONS OF CONSONANTS :

SPELLING	PHONEME	EXAMPLE	English Equivalent
Ch, ch	[tʃ]	<b>chai</b> (tea)	chat, church
Dh, dh	[ð]	<b>dhahabu</b> (gold)	this, that
Gh, gh	[R]	<b>ghali</b> (expensive)	in French : "rare"
Kh, kh	[χ]	<b>subalkheri</b> (good morning)	in Scottish : "loch"
Ng', ng'	[ŋ]	<b>ng'ombe</b> (cow)	singer
Ny, ny	[ɲ]	<b>nyota</b> (star)	new
Sh, sh	[ʃ]	<b>shule</b> (school)	shoe
Th, th	[θ]	<b>thelathini</b> (thirty)	think

Most of the real difficulties of Swahili are concentrated here. It is however important to try and pronounce these sounds correctly :

- **dh** and **th** are both written "th" in English. **dh** is voiced as in "the", "this", "that", "with" ... While **th** is unvoiced as in "think", "thin", "both" ...  
**stakabadhi** (= a receipt), **hadithi** (= a story).
- **gh** and **kh** are pronounced at the back of the throat. **gh** is voiced and close to the French "r" in "rare" :  
**ghali** (= expensive), **shughuli** (= affair, activity).  
**kh** is unvoiced and corresponds to a scraping of the throat :  
**subalkheri** (= good morning).
- **ng'** although similar in sound to the English "ng" in "singing" poses a difficulty, for it usually occurs at the initial of words. It is luckily quite rare :  
**ng'ambo** (= foreign), **ng'ombe** (= a cow).

#### 6. THE SYLLABIC CONSONANT "M" :

The syllable **M** corresponds to the class prefix **MU-** (Class 1 and Class 3) whose **U** has been dropped. However, the "m" doesn't merge with the following consonant and should be pronounced somewhat like "hummm !".  
The **M** syllabic can be accentuated (stressed syllable) in short words such as : **mtu** (= a person), **mti** (= a tree), **mji** (= a town, a city), etc..

SPELLING	EXAMPLE	TRANSLATION
<b>Mb</b>	<b>Mbuyu</b>	baobab
<b>Mch</b>	<b>Mchezo</b>	game
<b>Mf</b>	<b>Mfano</b>	example
<b>Mg</b>	<b>Mgeni</b>	guest, foreigner
<b>Mj</b>	<b>Mji</b>	town, city
<b>Mk</b>	<b>Mke</b>	wife
<b>Ml</b>	<b>Mlango</b>	door
<b>Mm</b>	<b>Mmea</b>	plant, crop
<b>Mn</b>	<b>Mnara</b>	minaret, tower
<b>Mp</b>	<b>Mpira</b>	ball, pipe, tube
<b>Ms</b>	<b>Msafiri</b>	traveller
<b>Msh</b>	<b>Mshahara</b>	salary
<b>Mt</b>	<b>Mtoto</b>	child
<b>Mv</b>	<b>Mvuvi</b>	fisherman
<b>Mz</b>	<b>Mzungu</b>	white man

## B - SYLLABE, STRESS AND PRONUNCIATION :

The Swahili syllable is said to be open, for it always ends on a vowel sound. For example :

<b>KI-SWA-HI-LI</b>	(= Swahili)	<b>JA-MBO</b>	(= hello !)	<b>M-ZU-NGU</b>	(= a white man)
<b>NG'O-MBE</b>	(= a cow)	<b>N-NE</b>	(= four)	<b>TA-NZA-NI-A</b>	(= Tanzania)

An extra vowel is usually added in loanwords, in order to conform to the open syllable pattern. For example :

<b>O-I-LI</b>	(= oil)	<b>SHI-LI-NGI</b>	(= shilling)	<b>BE-NKI</b>	(= bank)
<b>PE-TRO-LI</b>	(= petrol)	<b>NA-NA-SI</b>	(= pineapple)	<b>SHA-TI</b>	(= shirt)

The stress usually falls on the last but one syllable of a word. There are however a small number of exceptions, on words of Arabic origin. For example : **lazima** (= it is necessary) : /'lazima/ .

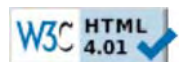
Compare also : **barabara** (= a road) : /bara'bara/ , and **barabara** (= very well) : /ba'rabara/ .

To listen to examples of words and phrases pronounced in Swahili, we invite you to visit the following page on Hassan O. Ali's excellent Swahili site : [useful\\_swahili\\_words](#).

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Read aloud the following words :

- a. Kaa, taa, saa, jaa, njaa, maana, chai, yai, zaidi, faida, laini, hao, wao, au, bilauri, sauti, dau, mzee, bei, cheo, leo, nyeupe, nyeusi, njia, kiasi, kulia, pia, siagi, raia, zii, hii, kiu, kiumbe, kuoaa, kupoa, kuzoea, choo, njoo, jogoo, kioo, ndoo, shikamoo, fua, barua, mvua, adui, kuzuia, huo, uongo, juu, huu, kuu.
- b. Wewe, wiki, dawa, bwana, kiswahili, ya, yao, hayo, yeye, mayai.
- c. Baba, bado, bata, barabara, marahaba, dada, debe, duka, baada, kufaa, fisi, afya, hafifu, gunia, kugawa, gari, kujenga, haba, hapa, hodi, sahihi, jembe, jambo, kujua, jibu, juzijuzi, kaka, kukaa, haraka, kidogo, kibaba, la, lakini, kulia, kubali, mama, muwa, mamlaka, na, naam, nanasi, nukta, neno, papa, pana, pole, kupaka, lipa, ruka, robo, starehe, sisi, siri, sababu, asante, tatu, tele, tisa, tafuta, matuta, kuvaa, vema, kavu, viti, uvivu.
- d. Chui, cheo, chafu, chache, dharau, fedha, dhahabu, ramadhani, ghali, ghafula, shughuli, lugha, subalkheri, ng'ambo, ng'ombe, ng'oa, nyuma, nyota, nyoka, shida, shilingi, shule, safisha, thumni, hadithi.
- e. Mbu, mbwa, mjinga, mhindi, mfalme, mchezo, mji, mkate, mlima, mnazi, mpaka, msaada, mstari, mswaki, mzungu.
- f. Tafadhali, magharibi, mashariki, nywele, kuchemsha, mchanganyiko, nyang'anya, masalkheri, thelathini, mgonjwa, maharagwe.

[Previous Chapter](#)
[Next Chapter](#)
[Table of Contents](#)




## Chapter 2 - Greetings

Swahili people pay a lot of importance to the exchange of greetings. Politeness recommends that you dedicate some moments to greeting a person and enquiring about his/her health, his/her activities, and possibly about his/her close relations, especially if you didn't meet each other for quite a while. It is only after this good humoured though formal exchange that you will brooch into the heart of the matter, or that you'll take leave of the person, with abundant goodbyes !

### 1. COMMON GREETINGS :

GREETINGS		ANSWERS	
- Jambo !	= Hello !	- Jambo !	= Hello !
- Jambo Bwana.	= Hello, Sir.	- Jambo !	= Hello !
- Jambo Mama.	= Hello, Madam.	- Jambo !	= Hello !
- Salama ?	= Are you fine ?	- Salama !	= Fine !
- Mambo (vipi) ?	= How are things ?	- Poa tu ! / Safi !	= Cool !

But this is just for the tourists ! Whenever possible, prefer using these more authentic greetings, that will make you pass for a real "mswahili" :

- Hujambo !	= How are you ?	- Sijambo !	= I am fine !
- Hamjambo !	= How are you ? ( <i>Plur</i> )	- Hatujambo !	= We are fine !
- Shikamoo !	= My respects ! ( <i>to an elder person</i> )	- Marahaba !	= Thank you.

### 2. THE EXCHANGE OF NEWS :

These simple greetings are often followed by more precise questions, on the time of the day, the health, the family, the children, etc...

All these questions start with the word **HABARI** which means "news".

There are two possibilities : either you are expecting a precise answer : in this case you use **Habari ya ... ?** (= What's the news of ... ? ), or you are simply asking out of mere politeness, without any precise intention, in that case you use **Habari za ... ?** (= What are the news of ... ? ).

- Habari ?	- What's new ?
- Habari gani ?	- How are you ?
- Habari yako / zako ?	- What are your news ?

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| - Habari ya / za leo ?      | - How are you today ?          |
| - Habari ya / za asubuhi ?  | - How are you this morning ?   |
| - Habari ya / za mchana ?   | - How are you this afternoon ? |
| - Habari ya / za jioni ?    | - How are you this evening ?   |
| - Habari ya / za nyumbani ? | - What about your home ?       |
| - Habari ya / za kazi ?     | - What about your work ?       |
| - Habari ya / za mtoto ?    | - How is the child ?           |
| - Habari ya / za safari ?   | - How is/was your journey ?    |

Except in case of misfortune (death, serious illness, etc...) you will invariably answer with :

- Njema !                      or - Nzuri !                      or - Salama !                      = Fine !



### Chakubanga

- Haya ! Bwana Chaku habari gani ?
- Habari nikuulize wewe uliyelundika nguo kichwani ukaacha mapajani je una kichaa ?
- So ! Mr Chaku how are you ?
- I should return your question, you who piled your skirt on your head, say, are you mad ?

### 3. OTHER COMMON EXPRESSIONS :

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| - Subalkheri !        | - Good morning ! ( <i>Arabic greeting</i> ) |
| - Masalkheri !        | - Good evening ! ( <i>Arabic greeting</i> ) |
| - Hamjambo nyumbani ? | - How is the family ?                       |
| - U hali gani ?       | - How are you ?                             |
| - U mzima ?           | - Your health is good ?                     |
| - (Ni) mzima          | - I am well.                                |
| - Na wewe ?           | - And you ?                                 |
| - Na wewe pia ?       | - And you (are you well) ?                  |
| - Haya !              | - So ! / O.K. ! / Let's go !                |

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| - Naam !        | - Yes ? ( <i>In answer to a call</i> ) |
| - Ndiyo         | - Yes                                  |
| - Siyo / Hapana | - No                                   |
| - Aha !         | - No !                                 |
| - Tafadhali     | - Please                               |
| - Asante (sana) | - Thank you (very much)                |
| - Hamna shida   | - Don't mention it / No problem        |

When a person feels poor or has undergone a bereavement, you tell him / her :

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| - Pole !               | - Sorry !               |
| - Pole na msiba wako ! | - My sincere sympathy ! |

When a person goes on a journey, you can also tell him / her :

- |                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| - Pole na safari ! | - Be careful !          |
| - Safari njema !   | - Have a good journey ! |

The expected answer is naturally always :

- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| - Asante ! | - Thank you ! |
|------------|---------------|

#### 4. VISITING SOMEBODY AT HOME :

To announce your presence to somebody, you shout in front of the door :

- |          |                    |
|----------|--------------------|
| - Hodi ! | - Anybody's home ? |
|----------|--------------------|

To which the person answers :

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| - Karibu !   | - You're welcome !                                  |
| - Karibuni ! | - You're all welcome ! ( <i>To several people</i> ) |
| - Starehe !  | - Feel at ease !                                    |

to which you always answer :

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| - Asante !   | - Thank you !                              |
| - Asanteni ! | - Thank you ! ( <i>To several people</i> ) |

#### 5. GOOD-BYES :



The word to say goodbye is **Kwa heri !** which means literally : blessing, or happiness, or "Best of luck !"

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| - <b>Kwa heri !</b>            | - Good bye ! <i>(To a single person)</i> |
| - <b>Kwa herini !</b>          | - Good bye ! <i>(To several people)</i>  |
| - <b>Kwa heri ya kuonana !</b> | - See you soon !                         |
| - <b>Tutaonana !</b>           | - See you again.                         |
| - <b>Tutaonana kesho.</b>      | - See you tomorrow !                     |
| - <b>Asubuhi njema.</b>        | - Have a good morning !                  |

When taking leave at night, you can wish :

- |                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| - <b>Usiku mwema !</b> | - Good night ! |
|------------------------|----------------|

At the time of sleeping, you can also wish :

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| - <b>Lala salama !</b> | - Sweet dreams ! |
|------------------------|------------------|

[NOW, LEARN THE SONG : JAMBO :](#)

Jambo !  
Jambo Bwana !  
Habari gani ?  
Nzuri sana !

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Click on the lion to get the exercise :



**EXERCISE 2 :** translate into English :

1. - Hodi !
2. - Karibu !
3. - Starehe !
4. - Jambo mama !
5. - Jambo bwana !
6. - Hamjambo nyumbani ?
7. - Njema. Habari zako ?
8. - Nzuri sana. Haya, kwa heri !
9. - Asante. Kwa heri ya kuonana !
10. - Haya ! Tutaonana kesho.

**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. - Hello ! How are you ? - I am fine.
2. - How is work ? - Fine.
3. - What about home ? - Fine.
4. - Sorry ! - Thank you very much.
5. - My respects - Thank you.
6. - Anybody's home ? - Welcome !
7. - How is the health ? - Well.
8. - Hello ! - Hello !
9. - Good bye. See you tomorrow. - OK !
10. - Good night, sweet dreams ! - Thank you, the same to you.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 3 - The Infinitive

### 1. GENERALITIES

The main characteristic of the Swahili verb is its agglutinative aspect. In order to be functional, to be conjugated and be part of the sentence, we must attach to it a certain number of affixes : prefixes, infixes and suffixes, according to the situation. All these affixes possess a precise position and function. The general position scheme of these affixes in relation to the verb radical is as follows :

**Pre-Prefix + Subject Prefix + Tense marker + Object Infix + RADICAL + Derivation + Suffix + Post-Suffix**

Luckily enough, it is very rare for a verb to possess all these affixes at one and the same time !  
These different affixes and their functions will all be explained along the following chapters.

### 2. THE INFINITIVE

In English, the infinitive is shown by the word **TO** placed before the verb.  
In Swahili, the infinitive is marked by the prefix **KU-** attached to the verb radical.

**KU + RADICAL**

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>KU-FIKA</b>	to arrive	<b>KU-PATA</b>	to have, to find, to get
<b>KU-FANYA</b>	to do	<b>KU-PIGA</b>	to strike, to hit
<b>KU-JUA</b>	to know	<b>KU-KAMATA</b>	to catch
<b>KU-SIKIA</b>	to hear	<b>KU-SOMA</b>	to read, to learn
<b>KU-ANGALIA</b>	to look at	<b>KU-WEKA</b>	to put

As shown through these different examples, the radical of the Swahili verbs of Bantu origin ends in **-A** in the infinitive. There are however a few exceptions, especially with verbs of Arabic origin, which end in **-E**, **-I** or **-U**.

### 3. SOME VERBS OF ARABIC ORIGIN :

<b>Ku-badili</b>	to exchange	<b>Ku-jaribu</b>	to try
<b>Ku-baki</b>	to stay	<b>Ku-jibu</b>	to answer
<b>Ku-faulu</b>	to succeed	<b>Ku-kefi</b>	to sit
<b>Ku-fikiri</b>	to think	<b>Ku-rudi</b>	to return, to come back
<b>Ku-furahi</b>	to rejoice	<b>Ku-safiri</b>	to travel
<b>Ku-haribu</b>	to destroy	<b>Ku-samehe</b>	to forgive

### 4. A LIST OF COMMON VERBS :

<b>Ku-anguka</b>	to fall	<b>Ku-ona</b>	to see
<b>Ku-chukua</b>	to seize, to take	<b>Ku-penda</b>	to love
<b>Ku-faa</b>	to fit	<b>Ku-pika</b>	to cook
<b>Ku-fuata</b>	to follow	<b>Ku-safisha</b>	to clean
<b>Ku-funga</b>	to close	<b>Ku-sema</b>	to say, to tell
<b>Ku-fungua</b>	to open	<b>Ku-simama</b>	to stop
<b>Ku-kaa</b>	to stay, to live	<b>Ku-tafuta</b>	to look for
<b>Ku-kata</b>	to cut, to reduce	<b>Ku-taka</b>	to want
<b>Ku-leta</b>	to bring	<b>Ku-tupa</b>	to throw
<b>Ku-ngoja</b>	to wait	<b>Ku-uza</b>	to sell
<b>Ku-nunua</b>	to buy	<b>Ku-weza</b>	to be able

### 5. MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

<b>Ku-fa</b>	to die	<b>Ku-wa</b>	to be
<b>Ku-ja</b>	to come	<b>Ku-wa na</b>	to have
<b>Ku-la</b>	to eat	<b>Kw-enda</b>	to go
<b>Ku-nywa</b>	to drink	<b>Kw-isha</b>	to end

#### NOTE :

The last two verbs, **Kw-isha** and **Kw-enda**, although disyllabic, have been included in this table because they behave like monosyllabic verbs in their conjugation.

We also note that the **U** of **KU-** weakens into **W** before the vowel **E** or **I** of the radical.

### 6. THE NEGATIVE INFINITIVE :

Swahili possesses a negative infinitive. It is obtained by inserting the infix **-TO-** between the infinitive prefix **KU-** and the radical of the verb. An extra **KU-**, which is compulsory in the case of monosyllabic verbs, is sometimes added before the radical.

**KU + TO (+ KU) + RADICAL**

EXAMPLES :

	<u><b>Affirmative</b></u>		<u><b>Negative</b></u>
<b>Kusoma</b>	to read	-> <b>Kuto(ku)soma</b>	not to read
<b>Kufanya</b>	to do	-> <b>Kuto(ku)fanya</b>	not to do
<b>Kujibu</b>	to answer	-> <b>Kuto(ku)jibu</b>	not to answer
<b>Kurudi</b>	to come back	-> <b>Kuto(ku)rudi</b>	not to come back
<b>Kula</b>	to eat	-> <b>Kutokula</b>	not to eat
<b>Kufa</b>	to die	-> <b>Kutokufa</b>	not to die

**EXERCISES**

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into swahili :

- a. To learn, to catch, to arrive, to try, to wait, to look at, to see, to hear, to think, to answer, to strike, to have, to do, to know, to love, to go, to come, to drink, to eat, to be, to clean, to want, to sit, to come back, to succeed.
- b. Not to find, not to catch, not to do, not to try, not to know, not to come back, not to stay, not to bring, not to wait, not to say, not to buy, not to sell, not to read, not to hear, not to stop.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- a. Kuweka, kubaki, kusafiri, kusamehe, kuanguka, kukaa, kusimama, kuuza, kununua, kupika, kwisha, kusema, kufunga, kufungua, kuleta, kufa, kufaa, kujibu, kujaribu, kufurahi, kubadili, kuweza, kuketi, kufuata, kutafuta.
- b. Kutokuwa, kutokunywa, kutokula, kutokuja, kutoweka, kutofika, kutofaulu, kutofurahi, kutosafiri, kutofaa, kutokuona, kutokupika, kutotaka, kutokuweza, kutofikiri.



## Chapter 4 - The Imperative

### 1. The Direct Imperative :

The Direct Imperative is used to give an "abrupt" order, as would a boss to an employee, or a parent to a child. It is the most simple verbal form, since it is simply made of the verb radical.

If we take the verb **KUFANYA** for example, we simply remove the infinitive prefix **KU-**, which gives : **FANYA !** = do !

The Direct Imperative possesses only 2 persons : the second person singular (= "you" singular) and the second person plural (= "you" plural).

The plural is formed by replacing the ending **-A** of the radical by the suffix **-ENI**.

#### SOME VERBS IN THE DIRECT IMPERATIVE :

2 <sup>nd</sup> person singular		2 <sup>nd</sup> person plural	
<b>Fanya !</b>	do !	<b>Fanyeni !</b>	do !
<b>Funga !</b>	close !	<b>Fungeni !</b>	close !
<b>Fungua !</b>	open !	<b>Fungueni !</b>	open !
<b>Kamata !</b>	catch !	<b>Kamateni !</b>	catch !
<b>Ngoja !</b>	wait !	<b>Ngojeni !</b>	wait !
<b>Safisha !</b>	clean !	<b>Safisheni !</b>	clean !
<b>Sikia !</b>	hear !	<b>Sikieni !</b>	hear !
<b>Soma !</b>	read ! / learn !	<b>Someni !</b>	read ! / learn !

#### PARTICULAR CASES:

- Monosyllabic verbs keep the prefix **KU-** of the infinitive :

<b>Kula !</b>	eat !	<b>Kuleni !</b>	eat !
<b>Kunywa !</b>	drink !	<b>Kunyweni !</b>	drink !

- Verbs of Arabic origin, behave as verbs of Bantu origin in the second person singular. In the second person plural, we add **-NI** at the end of the radical, without modifying the final vowel (**E, I** ou **U**) :

<b>Jaribu !</b>	try !	<b>Jaribuni !</b>	try !
<b>Rudi !</b>	come back !	<b>Rudini !</b>	come back !
<b>(Ni-)samehe !</b>	forgive(-me) !	<b>(Ni-)sameheni !</b>	forgive(-me) !

EXCEPTIONS :

- The verb **KULETA** (= to bring) makes **LETE !** (= bring !) instead of **LETA** in the second person singular.
- The verb **KUJA** (= to come) makes **NJOO !** (= come !) and **NJOONI !** (= come !).
- The verb **KWENDA** (= to go) makes **NENDA !** (= go !) and **NENDENI !** (= go !).



## Chakubanga

- Naona hiyo chai imepoa. Nenda kaipashe moto tena.
- Chakubanga ! Una kunguni tumboni siku hizi ?
- I can see the tea is cool. Go and warm it again.
- Chakubanga ! Have you got bugs in your stomach these days ?

**2. THE POLITE IMPERATIVE :**

In Swahili, as in many other languages, the more you lengthen the verbal formula when giving an order, the more you soften its "abruptness", and the more you show yourself polite.

Compare for instance in English : Come ! / Can you come ! / Are you coming ? / Would you like to come ? / I wish you would come / etc...

A common way of easing the rough edge of an order is to use the subjunctive. (See: [Chapter 33 - The Subjunctive.](#))

This is done by removing the prefix **KU-** of the infinitive and by replacing the ending **-A** with **-E**.

The second person singular begins with the pronominal prefix **U-**.

While the second person plural begins with the pronominal prefix **M-**.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL + E**SOME VERBS IN THE POLITE IMPERATIVE :

<b>2<sup>nd</sup> person singular</b>		<b>2<sup>nd</sup> person plural</b>	
<b>Ufanye !</b>	do !	<b>Mfanye !</b>	do !
<b>Ufungue !</b>	close !	<b>Mfungue !</b>	close !
<b>Ufungue !</b>	open !	<b>Mfungue !</b>	open !
<b>Ulete !</b>	bring !	<b>Mlete !</b>	bring !
<b>Upike !</b>	cook !	<b>Mpike !</b>	cook !
<b>Usafishe !</b>	clean !	<b>Msafishe !</b>	clean !

VERBS OF ARABIC ORIGIN :

<b>Ujaribu !</b>	try !	<b>Mjaribu !</b>	try !
<b>Urudi !</b>	come back !	<b>Mrudi !</b>	come back !
<b>Usamehe !</b>	forgive !	<b>Msamehe !</b>	forgive !

MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

<b>Uende !</b>	go !	<b>Mwende !</b>	go !
<b>Uje !</b>	come !	<b>Mje !</b>	come !
<b>Ule !</b>	eat !	<b>Mle !</b>	eat !
<b>Unywe !</b>	drink !	<b>Mnywe !</b>	drink !

**3. THE IMPERATIVE OF THE 1<sup>st</sup> PERSON PLURAL :**

So far we have studied the imperative of the 2nd person (singular and plural). It's now time to see the imperative of the 1st person plural (we). Actually, it is built exactly on the same pattern as the polite imperative, simply replacing the subject prefix **U-** (= you) by **TU-** (= we).

**TU + VERB RADICAL + E**SOME EXAMPLES :

<b>1<sup>st</sup> person plural</b>	
<b>Tufanye !</b>	let's make !
<b>Tufunge !</b>	let's close !
<b>Tufungue !</b>	let's open !
<b>Tulete !</b>	let's bring !
<b>Tupike !</b>	let's cook !



**Tusafishe !**                      let's clean !

#### VERBS OF ARABIC ORIGIN :

**Tujaribu !**                      let's try !

**Tusamehe !**                      let's forgive !

#### MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

**Twende !**                      let's go !

**Tule !**                      let's eat !

**Tuwe !**                      let's be !

### **4. THE NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE :**

There is only one negative form corresponding both to the direct imperative and to the polite imperative.

The negation is formed in the following way :

- Remove the prefix **KU-** of the infinitive,
- add the pronominal prefix **U-** for the singular and **M-** for the plural,
- insert the negative infix **-SI-** between the pronoun and the radical,
- replace the verb ending **-A** with **-E** in the case of verbs of Bantu origin.

#### EXAMPLES :

<u>Bantu verb :</u>	<b>KU-FANYA</b>	-> <b>-FANYA</b>	-> <b>U-SI-FANY-E</b>
<u>Arabic verb :</u>	<b>KU-JIBU</b>	-> <b>-JIBU</b>	-> <b>U-SI-JIBU</b>
<u>Monosyllabic verb :</u>	<b>KU-LA</b>	-> <b>-LA</b>	-> <b>U-SI-L-E</b>

### **SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + VERB RADICAL + E**

#### SOME VERBS IN THE IMPERATIVE :

##### 2nd person singular

<b>Usifanye !</b>	don't do !
<b>Usifuute !</b>	don't follow !
<b>Usiharibu !</b>	don't destroy !
<b>Usijibu !</b>	don't answer !
<b>Usile !</b>	don't eat !

##### 2nd person plural

<b>Msifanye !</b>	don't do !
<b>Msifuute !</b>	don't follow !
<b>Msiharibu !</b>	don't destroy !
<b>Msijibu !</b>	don't answer !
<b>Msile !</b>	don't eat !

<b>Usilete !</b>	don't bring !	<b>Msilete !</b>	don't bring !
<b>Usingoje !</b>	don't wait !	<b>Msingoje !</b>	don't wait !
<b>Usinywe !</b>	don't drink !	<b>Msinywe !</b>	don't drink !
<b>Usipige !</b>	don't strike !	<b>Msipige !</b>	don't strike !
<b>Usiweke !</b>	don't put !	<b>Msiweke !</b>	don't put !

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Put these verbs in the Direct Imperative :

Kusikia, kurudi, kukamata, kujaribu, kuangalia, kufikiri, kula, kuleta, kutafuta, kusimama, kuja, kwenda, kufunga, kungoja, kwisha.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Put these verbs in the Polite Imperative :

Kubadili, kufika, kufanya, kusoma, kuweka, kubaki, kujaribu, kusamehe, kununua, kupika, kufuata, kufungua, kuja, kwenda, kusema.

**EXERCISE 3 :** Put these verbs in the 1st person plural of the Imperative :

Kubadili, kufika, kufanya, kusoma, kuweka, kubaki, kujaribu, kusamehe, kununua, kupika, kufuata, kufungua, kuja, kwenda, kusema.

**EXERCISE 4 :** Put these verbs in the Negative Imperative :

Kuja, kwenda, kuleta, kupiga, kuuza, kupenda, kusafiri, kujibu, kufikiri, kuangalia, kufika, kukaa, kununua, kujaribu, kubaki.

**EXERCISE 5 :** Translate into English :

- a. **Njoo ! Nenda ! Fuata ! Fanya ! Piga ! Lete ! Rudi ! Jaribu !**
- b. **Njooni ! Fanyeni ! Jaribuni ! Sameheni ! Leteni ! Fuateni ! Tafuteni ! Nendeni !**
- c. **Upike ! Usafishe ! Mfungue ! Mjaribu ! Ujue ! Uweke ! Mfaulu ! Ule !**
- d. **Usijibu ! Usisome ! Usiende ! Usinywe ! Usiseme ! Usiangalie ! Usiwe ! Usikae !**
- e. **Msifuate ! Msibaki ! Msirudi ! Msifikiri ! Msianguke ! Msifungue ! Msiketi ! Msione !**

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 5 - The Nominal Classes

In swahili, as in any other Bantu languages, substantives are not divided into genders of the masculine / feminine / neutral types, but in nominal classes. Swahili includes 13 nominal classes, plus three extra classes called the locative classes.

In order to rationalize the study of the nominal classes, these can be grouped into 7 "genders" (or categories) that each include 2 classes : one class for the singular and another class for the plural.

The 6<sup>th</sup> "gender" doesn't possess any specific plural but borrows its plurals from the other classes. The 7<sup>th</sup> "gender" is made of substantivated verbs and has no plural.

These 7 "genders" loosely correspond to more or less extended semantic categories.

The different nominal classes are recognized and definable by their prefixes, that is to say the first syllable of the noun, which will cause in turn a series of agreements through prefixes (and infixes) on the adjectives, pronouns, demonstratives, possessives, verbs, etc... in the sentence.

Swahili doesn't differentiate between definite or indefinite nouns, and neither does it distinguish between masculine or feminine for names of people.

**Summarized table of the 13 nominal classes in Swahili,  
grouped into 7 genders, and the 3 locative classes :**

<b>GENDERS / CLASSES</b>	<b>NOMINAL PREFIXES</b>	<b>EXAMPLES</b>	<b>SEMANTIC CATEGORIES</b>
<b>M-/WA-</b> Cl 1 Singular Cl 2 Plural	<b>M-, MW- WA-, W-</b>	(person) <b>MTU</b> <b>WATU</b>	Names of human beings exclusively, + 2 names of animals. No object.
<b>M-/MI-</b> Cl 3 Singular Cl 4 Plural	<b>M-, MW- MI-, M-</b>	(tree) <b>MTI</b> <b>MITI</b>	Names of trees, plants, nature, parts of the human body, human activities.
<b>JI-/MA-</b> Cl 5 Singular Cl 6 Plural	<b>Ø- or JI- MA-</b>	(fruit) <b>TUNDA</b> <b>MATUNDA</b>	Names of fruits, uncountables, everyday life objects, persons, augmentatives, nouns of Arabic origin, etc...
<b>KI-/VI-</b> Cl 7 Singular Cl 8 Plural	<b>KI-, CH- VI-, VY-</b>	(chair) <b>KITI</b> <b>VITI</b>	Everyday objects, animals, parts of the human body, persons, diminutives, languages.
<b>N-</b> Cl 9 Singular Cl 10 Plural	<b>Ø- or N- Ø- or N-</b>	(cloth) <b>NGUO</b> <b>NGUO</b>	Abstract and concrete things, persons, animals, natural elements, nouns of foreign origin, etc...
<b>U-</b> Cl. 11, 14 Cl 10 Plural	<b>U-, W- Ø- or N-</b>	(face) <b>USO</b> <b>NYUSO</b>	Nouns of objects (Cl. 11), Singular abstract nouns (Cl. 14).
<b>KU-</b> Cl. 15	<b>KU-, KW-</b>	(reading) <b>KUSOMA</b>	Substantivated verbs.
<b>Cl. Locatives</b> Cl. 16, 17, 18	<b>PA-, KU-, M-</b>	(place) <b>MAHALI</b>	A single noun. They are present in class agreements.



## Chapter 6 - The M-/WA- Gender

The **M-/WA-** gender (Classes 1 / 2) contains nouns of persons exclusively, plus two generic nouns of animals. It's the class prefix, i.e. the first syllable of the noun, that distinguishes the singular from the plural. There is no article in front of the noun, which can either be definite or indefinite :



Cl 1 (Singular) :

prefix **M-**

Cl 2 (Plural) :

prefix **WA-**

**MTU** = a person, the person

**WATU** = people, the people

In front of a vowel,

the singular prefix **M-** becomes **MW-** :

**MWALIMU** = a teacher, the teacher

The plural prefix **WA-** becomes **W-** :

**WALIMU** = teachers, the teachers

### 1. SOME NOUNS OF THE M-/WA- GENDER :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Mdudu	Wadudu	an insect, insects
Mfaransa	Wafaransa	a French, the French
Mgeni	Wageni	a guest, a foreigner, guests
Mgonjwa	Wagonjwa	a patient, patients
Mhindi	Wahindi	an Indian, Indians
Mjerumani	Wajerumani	a German, Germans
Mjomba	Wajomba	an uncle (maternal), uncles
Mke	Wake	a spouse, a wife, wives
Mkristo	Wakristo	a Christian, Christians
Mkulima	Wakulima	a farmer, farmers
Mnyama	Wanyama	an animal, animals
Mpishi	Wapishi	a cook, cooks
Msichana	Wasichana	a young girl, young girls
Mtoto	Watoto	a child, children

<b>Mtu</b>	<b>Watu</b>	a person, people
<b>Mume</b>	<b>Waume</b>	a husband, husbands
<b>Mvulana</b>	<b>Wavulana</b>	a young man, young men
<b>Mwafrika</b>	<b>Waafrica</b>	an African, Africans
<b>Mwalimu</b>	<b>Walimu</b>	a teacher, teachers
<b>Mwana</b>	<b>Wana</b>	a child, a son, a daughter, children
<b>Mwanadamu</b>	<b>Wanadamu</b>	a human being, (child of Adam)
<b>Mwanafunzi</b>	<b>Wanafunzi</b>	a student, a pupil, students
<b>Mwanamke</b>	<b>Wanawake</b>	a woman, women
<b>Mwanaume</b>	<b>Wanaume</b>	a man, men
<b>Mwarabu</b>	<b>Waarabu</b>	an Arab, Arabs
<b>Mwingereza</b>	<b>Waingereza</b>	an English, the English
<b>Mwislamu</b>	<b>Waislamu</b>	a Muslim, Muslims
<b>Mwitalia</b>	<b>Waitalia</b>	an Italian, Italians
<b>Mwizi</b>	<b>Wezi (a+i = e)</b>	a thief, thieves
<b>Mzee</b>	<b>Wazee</b>	an old man, old men
<b>Mzungu</b>	<b>Wazungu</b>	a white man, white men

## 2. OTHER NOUNS OF PEOPLE :

Although the **M-/WA-** gender exclusively contains nouns of people, it is not all inclusive. Thus, a certain number of nouns referring to people can be found in other genders : mainly in the **N-** gender (CI 9 / CI 10), the **KI-/VI-** gender (CI 7 / 8) and the **JI-/MA-** gender (CI 5 / 6). Yet, the verbs, adjectives, etc. that agree with them must take Class 1/2 prefix agreements.

### Nouns of the N- GENDER (CI 9 / CI 10)

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
<b>Baba</b>	<b>Baba</b>	father, dad
<b>Babu</b>	<b>Babu</b>	grand-father
<b>Dada</b>	<b>Dada</b>	sister
<b>Kaka</b>	<b>Kaka</b>	brother
<b>Mama</b>	<b>Mama</b>	mother, mum
<b>Nyanya</b>	<b>Nyanya</b>	grand-mother
<b>Rafiki</b>	<b>Rafiki</b>	friend
<b>Shangazi</b>	<b>Shangazi</b>	aunt (paternal)

**Nouns of the KI-/VI- GENDER (Classes 7 / 8) :**

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Kibarua	Vibarua	a day laborer, laborers
Kijana	Vijana	a youth, youths
Kipofu	Vipofu	a blind man, blind men
Kiziwi	Viziwi	a deaf person, deaf persons

**Nouns of the JI-/MA- GENDER (Classes 5 / 6) :**

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Bwana	Mabwana	Sir, master, gentlemen
Bibi	Mabibi	Madam, ladies
Dereva	Madereva	a driver, drivers

**3. CLASS AGREEMENTS :**

1. Adjectives : the adjective takes prefixes of class agreements identical to those of the noun : (See : [Chapter 11](#).)

<u>Class 1 :</u>	<b>Mtoto</b>	<b>mkubwa / mdogo / mzuri / mbaya / mwema / ...</b>	
	a	big / small / pretty / bad / nice / ...	child
<u>Class 2 :</u>	<b>Watoto</b>	<b>wakubwa / wadogo / wazuri / wabaya / wema / ...</b>	
		big / small / pretty / bad / nice / ...	children

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 1 :</u>	<b>Mtoto</b>	<b>wangu / wako / wake / wetu / wenu / wao</b>	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	child
<u>Class 2 :</u>	<b>Watoto</b>	<b>wangu / wako / wake / wetu / wenu / wao</b>	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	children



## VOCABULARY

<b>Ku-andika</b>	to write	<b>Ku-lia</b>	to cry
<b>Ku-cheza</b>	to play	<b>Ku-lima</b>	to cultivate
<b>Ku-chora</b>	to draw	<b>Ku-pita</b>	to pass
<b>Ku-fagia</b>	to sweep	<b>Ku-ruka</b>	to jump, to fly
<b>Ku-fanya kazi</b>	to work	<b>Ku-toka</b>	to leave, to come from
<b>Ku-ingia</b>	to enter, to come in	<b>Ku-vunja</b>	to break

### Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Play ! Sweep ! Work ! Come in ! Leave ! Draw ! Cultivate ! Jump ! Leave (Plur) ! Work (Plur) !
- b. Don't write ! Don't play ! Don't break ! Don't cry ! Don't pass ! Don't write (Plur) ! Don't come in (Plur) ! Don't jump (Plur) ! Don't play (Plur) ! Don't leave (Plur) !
- c. A guest, a child, a young girl, a husband, a man, a woman, a wife, an English, a white man, a Muslim, a cook, a teacher, a thief, an old man, a French.
- d. Human beings, Africans, Indians, French people, people, young men, children (sons / daughters), children, Germans, wives, husbands, pupils, farmers, uncles, animals.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- a. Mtu, mnyama, mdudu, mwanadamu, mwislamu, mkristo, mzungu, mwafrika, mfaransa, mtoto, mvulana, msichana, baba, kaka, mama, dada, mjomba, shangazi, kipofu, kibarua.
- b. Wakulima, walimu, wanafunzi, vibarua, wanaume, wanawake, waitalia, watu, wageni, wagonjwa, waarabu, wapishi, wezi, wazee, dada, kaka, rafiki, mabibi, mabwana, vijana.

### EXERCISE 3 : Put the nouns in the plural :



## Chapter 7 - The Subject Pronouns

In Swahili, the subject pronouns have the particularity of being always affixed to the verb as prefixes.

In the 3rd person singular and plural, there is no substitution between the subject noun and the subject prefix, but complementarity : the subject prefix is there, even when the subject noun is already expressed in the sentence.

### 1. AFFIRMATIVE SUBJECT PREFIXES :

GENDERS / Classes	SINGULAR	Equivalent	PLURAL	Equivalent
1° 2° M-/WA- Gender (Cl 1 / 2) 3°	NI- U- A-	= I = you = he, she	TU- M- WA-	= we = you = they
M-/MI- Gender (Cl 3 / 4)	U-	= it	I-	= they
JI-/MA- Gender (Cl 5 / 6)	LI-	= he / she / it	YA-	= they
KI-/VI- Gender (Cl 7 / 8)	KI-	= he / she / it	VI-	= they
N- Gender (Cl 9 / 10)	I-	= he / she / it	ZI-	= they
U- Gender (Cl 11 / 14)	U-	= it		
KU- Gender (Cl 15)	KU-	= it		
LOCATIVE CLASSES	PA-, KU- or M-	= it		

Only the **M-/WA-** gender (Classes 1 / 2) comprises subject prefixes for the 1st and 2nd persons singular and the 1st and 2nd persons plural.

In the 3rd person singular (he / she / it) and the 3rd person plural (they), the choice of the subject prefix depends on the nominal class to which the corresponding subject noun belongs.

However, when the subject noun represents a person, whatever the class it belongs to, we will use a subject prefix of Class 1 in the singular and Class 2 in the plural, as for the nouns of the **M-/WA-** gender.

#### EXAMPLES :

**Anafika**

He / she arrives

(Class 1)

**Mama anafika**

Mom (she) arrives

(Class 9 -> 1)

<b><u>Wamelala</u></b>	They sleep	(Class 2)
<b><u>Watoto wamelala</u></b>	The children (they) sleep	(Class 2)
<b><u>Amekufa</u></b>	He / she died	(Class 1)
<b><u>Mgonjwa amekufa</u></b>	The patient (he) died	(Class 1)
<b><u>Mbwa amekufa</u></b>	The dog (it) died	(Class 9 -> 1)
<b><u>Inafaa</u></b>	It fits	(Class 9)
<b><u>Nguo inafaa</u></b>	The cloth (it) fits	(Class 9)
<b><u>Zinafaa</u></b>	They fit	(Class 10)
<b><u>Nguo zinafaa</u></b>	The clothes fit	(Class 10)
<b><u>Linakwenda</u></b>	It leaves	(Class 5)
<b><u>Basi linakwenda</u></b>	The bus (it) leaves	(Class 5)

## 2. NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIXES :

Those result from the combination of the negative pre-prefix **HA-** and the subject prefix, except in the 1st person singular (**SI-**) and the 2nd person singular (**HU-** instead of **HAU-**). Thus :

GENDERS / Classes	SINGULAR	Equivalent	PLURAL	Equivalent
1° 2° M-/WA- Gender (CI 1 / 2 ) 3°	<b>SI-</b> <b>HU-</b> <b>HA-</b>	= I don't = you don't = he / she doesn't	<b>HATU-</b> <b>HAM-</b> <b>HAWA-</b>	= we don't = you don't = they don't
M-/MI- Gender (CI 3 / 4)	<b>HAU-</b>	= it doesn't	<b>HAI-</b>	= they don't
JI-/MA- Gender (CI 5 / 6)	<b>HALI-</b>	= he / she / it doesn't	<b>HAYA-</b>	= they don't
KI-/VI- Gender (CI 7 / 8)	<b>HAKI-</b>	= he / she / it doesn't	<b>HAVI-</b>	= they don't
N- Gender (CI 9 / 10)	<b>HAI-</b>	= he / she / it doesn't	<b>HAZI-</b>	= they don't
U- Gender (CI 11 / 14)	<b>HAU-</b>	= it doesn't		
KU- Gender (CI 15)	<b>HAKU-</b>	= it doesn't		
LOCATIVE CLASSES	<b>HAPA-, HAKU-</b> or <b>HAM-</b>	= it doesn't		

### EXAMPLES :

<b><u>Sijui</u></b>	I don't know	(Class 1)
<b><u>Hajui</u></b>	He / she doesn't know	(Class 1)
<b><u>Hamadi hajui</u></b>	Hamadi (he) doesn't know	(Class 1)
<b><u>Hawafanyi kazi</u></b>	They don't work	(Class 2)

<b><u>Vibarua</u> hawafanyi kazi</b>	The day laborers (they) don't work	(Class 8 -> 2)
<b><u>Hawasomi</u></b>	They don't study	(Class 2)
<b><u>Wanafunzi</u> hawasomi</b>	The students (they) don't study	(Class 2)
<b><u>Hakuna</u> kazi</b>	There is no work	(Locative Class)
<b><u>Hamna</u> shida</b>	There is no problem	(Locative Class)

### 3. THE AUTONOMOUS PERSONAL PRONOUNS :

<b>MIMI</b>	= I, me
<b>WEWE</b>	= you
<b>YEYE</b>	= he, she, him, her
<b>SISI</b>	= we, us
<b>NINYI</b>	= you (Plur)
<b>WAO</b>	= they, them

With ordinary verbs, the autonomous personal pronoun reinforces the subject prefix, without replacing it. Thus :

<b><u>Yeye</u> anakwenda Dodoma</b>	= Him, he goes to Dodoma
<b><u>Mimi</u> sisemi kiswahili</b>	= Me, I don't speak Swahili

On the other hand, with the verb **KUWA** (= to be) in the present tense, the personal pronoun is essential to mark the person, since the verb is identical for all the persons :

<b><u>Mimi</u> ni mwalimu</b>	= I am a teacher
<b><u>Wewe</u> ni mfarantsa</b>	= You are French
<b><u>Yeye</u> ni mkenya</b>	= He is Kenyan
<b><u>Sisi</u> ni wanafunzi</b>	= We are pupils
<b><u>Ninyi</u> ni wageni</b>	= You are the guests
<b><u>Wao</u> ni watanzania</b>	= They are Tanzanians

It will be the same in the negative form, by replacing **NI** with **SI**. For example :

<b><u>Mimi</u> si mjinga</b>	= I'm not an idiot
<b><u>Yeye</u> si mkulima</b>	= He is not a farmer

### 4. A PARTICULAR PRONOUN : "-OTE" :

**-OTE** which means : "all" can be used as an independant pronoun, or accompany a noun. In all cases, it agrees in class with the name to which it refers. Because of its meaning, it is more frequently used in the plural than in the

singular.

GENDERS / Classes	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>M-/WA-</b> (CI 1 - 2)		<b>WOTE</b>
<b>M-/MI-</b> (CI 3 - 4)	<b>WOTE</b>	<b>YOTE</b>
<b>JI-/MA-</b> (CI 5 - 6)	<b>LOTE</b>	<b>YOTE</b>
<b>KI-/VI-</b> (CI 7 - 8)	<b>CHOTE</b>	<b>VYOTE</b>
<b>N-</b> (CI 9 - 10)	<b>YOTE</b>	<b>ZOTE</b>
<b>U-</b> (CI 11, 14 - 10)	<b>WOTE</b>	<b>ZOTE</b>

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>Mwili</b> <u>wote</u> waniuma	All the body hurts me
<b>Lete visu</b> <u>vyote</u>	Bring all the knives
<b>Chakula</b> <u>chote</u> kimeharibika	All the food is damaged
<b>Watu</b> <u>wote</u> wamefika	Everybody has arrived

We can also associate **-OTE** with personal pronouns or with numbers. For example :

<b>Sisi</b> <u>sote</u>	Us all / All of us
<b>Ninyi</b> <u>nyote</u>	You all / All of you
<b>Sote</b> wawili	Us two / Both of us
<b>Nyote</b> wawili	You two / Both of you
<b>(Vitabu)</b> <u>vyote</u> viwili	Both (books)
<b>(Miti)</b> <u>yote</u> mitatu	All three (trees)

## VOCABULARY

<b>Mfanyakazi (wa-)</b>	a worker, workers	<b>Msafiri (wa-)</b>	a traveller, travellers
<b>Mgiriki (wa-)</b>	a Greek, Greeks	<b>Mtanzania (wa-)</b>	a Tanzanian, Tanzanians
<b>Mjinga (wa-)</b>	an idiot, idiots	<b>Mwashi (wa-)</b>	a mason, masons
<b>Mkenya (wa-)</b>	a Kenyan, Kenyans	<b>Mwongo (wa-)</b>	a liar, liars
<b>Mlewi (wa-)</b>	a drunkard, drunkards	<b>Mzanzibari (wa-)</b>	a Zanzibarian, Zanzibarians



## Chapter 8 - The Present Definite Tense

The present definite tense in Swahili is primarily used to describe actions which take place at the time when one speaks. It is anchored in the present moment and has the same value as the PRESENT CONTINUOUS in English.

### 1. THE AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the present definite is the infix **-NA-** which is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verb radical. The termination of the verb does not change.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + NA + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

	<b>NI-NA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; ninafanya</b>	I am making
	<b>U-NA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; unafanya</b>	you are making
(Classe 1, Sing.)	<b>A-NA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; anafanya</b>	he / she is making
	<b>TU-NA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tunafanya</b>	we are making
	<b>M-NA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mnafanya</b>	you are making
(Classe 2, Plur.)	<b>WA-NA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; wanafanya</b>	they are making

#### NOTE :

Monosyllabic verbs keep the infinitive prefix **KU-** :

<b>KUJA</b> (= to come)	<b>NI-NA-KU-JA</b>	<b>-&gt; ninakuja</b>	I am coming
<b>KWENDA</b> (= to go)	<b>A-NA-KW-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; anakwenda</b>	he / she is going

### 2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :

There is not tense marker on the negative present definite. A negative subject prefix is directly followed by the verb radical. In case of a Bantu verb, its termination **-A** changes into **-I**. On the other hand, verbs of Arabic origin keep their final vowel without taking **-I**. As for monosyllabic verbs, they lose the infinitive prefix **KU-** but take the termination **-I**.

**NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL + I**

MODEL 1 (Verb of Bantu origin) : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>SI-FANY-I</b>	-> <b>sifanyi</b>	I am not making
<b>(HA+U) : HU-FANY-I</b>	-> <b>hufanyi</b>	you are not making
<b>(HA+A) : HA-FANY-I</b>	-> <b>hafanyi</b>	he / she is not making
<b>HA-TU-FANY-I</b>	-> <b>hatufanyi</b>	we are not making
<b>HA-M-FANY-I</b>	-> <b>hamfanyi</b>	you are not making
<b>HA-WA-FANY-I</b>	-> <b>hawafanyi</b>	they are not making

MODEL 2 (Verb of Arabic origin) : **KUJIBU** = to answer

<b>SI-JIBU</b>	-> <b>sijibu</b>	I am not answering
<b>(HA+U) : HU-JIBU</b>	-> <b>hujibu</b>	you are not answering
<b>(HA+A) : HA-JIBU</b>	-> <b>hajibu</b>	he / she is not answering
<b>HA-TU-JIBU</b>	-> <b>hatujibu</b>	we are not answering
<b>HA-M-JIBU</b>	-> <b>hamjibu</b>	you are not answering
<b>HA-WA-JIBU</b>	-> <b>hawajibu</b>	they are not answering

MODEL 3 (Monosyllabic verbs) : **KUJA** = to come

<b>SI-J-I</b>	-> <b>siji</b>	I am not coming
<b>(HA+U) : HU-J-I</b>	-> <b>huji</b>	you are not coming
<b>(HA+A) : HA-J-I</b>	-> <b>haji</b>	he / she is not coming
<b>HA-TU-J-I</b>	-> <b>hatuji</b>	we are not coming
<b>HA-M-J-I</b>	-> <b>hamji</b>	you are not coming
<b>HA-WA-J-I</b>	-> <b>hawaji</b>	they are not coming

**3. SOME SENTENCES IN THE PRESENT DEFINITE :**

<b>Mama anapika</b>	Mother is cooking
<b>Rafiki wanakuja leo</b>	The friends are coming today
<b>Watoto wanacheza mpira</b>	The children are playing ball

**Unapenda mpira ya miguu ?**

Do you like football ?

**Ninapenda mpira sana**

I like football a lot

**Hawaji leo**

They are not coming today

**Hatufanyi kazi**

We are not working

## VOCABULARY

<b>Na</b>	and, with	<b>au</b>	or
<b>Lakini</b>	but	<b>Leo</b>	today
<b>Sasa</b>	now	<b>Tena</b>	again
<b>Kila</b>	each, every	<b>Sana</b>	very, a lot

## EXERCISES

### **EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. I love, I'm writing, I'm going out, you are breaking, she is crying, they are drawing, they are leaving, we are working, she is sweeping, you are cultivating (Plur), he is jumping, we are playing, you are cleaning, you are waiting (Plur), you are reading (Plur).
- b. The child is playing, the little child is crying, the men are eating, the women are cleaning, the teacher is working, the pupils are coming in, the driver is waiting, the youths are coming back, my parents are travelling, my children are reading, the father is working, the friends are coming back, the drunkard is drinking, the masons are working, the fisherman is coming back.
- c. I'm not playing, he is not drawing, we are not trying, you don't come, he doesn't stay, I don't know, you don't drink, she is not working, we are not going, you don't answer, they are not cooking, I am not travelling, you don't hear, he doesn't sleep, it doesn't fit.

### **EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- a. **Anafika, unakuja, wanapiga, tunafurahi, mnasafiri, inafaa, wanajaribu, anabaki, ninabadili, tunasafisha, mnapika, unakaa, anafuata, tunangoja, ninanunua.**



- b. **Sijui, sifikiri, sisemi, hujui, hujibu, husomi, hasikii, harudi, hasafiri, hatuingii, hatufaulu, hamwendi, hawali, hawanyi, hawafanyi.**

**EXERCISE 3** : Translate into English :

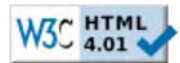
1. **Wewe ni mtanzania.**
2. **Unasema kiswahili.**
3. **Lakini husemi kiingereza.**
4. **Mtoto anapenda kucheza sana.**
5. **Baba na mama wanasafiri leo.**
6. **Mwanafunzi anajaribu kusoma.**
7. **Vibarua hawafanyi kazi leo.**
8. **Wazazi wangu wanakaa Zanzibar.**
9. **Jaribu kusema kiswahili !**
10. **Mimi ni mwingereza. Sijui kiswahili sana.**

---

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 9 - The M-/MI- Gender

The **M-/MI-** gender (Classes 3 / 4) is not as specific as the **M-/WA-** gender.

It includes primarily nouns of trees, objects, parts of the human body, elements of nature, etc..

But it doesn't contain any nouns of human beings.



Cl 3 (Singular) :

prefix **M-**

**MTI** = a tree, the tree

Cl 4 (Plural) :

prefix **MI-**

**MITI** = trees, the trees

In front of **a, e, i**

the singular prefix **M-** becomes **MW-** :

**MWILI** = a body, the body

NOTE :

In the singular, nothing distinguishes a noun belonging to the **M-/MI-** gender from a noun of the **M-/WA-** gender, therefore the question is to guess whether its plural should either be in **WA-** or in **MI-**. The only way to solve the problem is to know that noun : if it represents a person, its plural is in **WA-**, whereas if it is not a person, its plural is in **MI-**...

### 1. SOME NOUNS OF THE M-/MI- GENDER (Classes 3 / 4) :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
<b>Mbuyu</b>	<b>mibuyu</b>	a baobab tree, baobab trees
<b>Mchele</b>	<b>michele</b>	husked rice
<b>Mchezo</b>	<b>michezo</b>	a game, games
<b>Mchungwa</b>	<b>michungwa</b>	an orange tree, orange trees
<b>Mdomo</b>	<b>midomo</b>	a lip, a beak, a mouth, lips
<b>Mfano</b>	<b>mifano</b>	an example, examples
<b>Mfereji</b>	<b>mifereji</b>	a ditch, a water tap, ditches
<b>Mfuko</b>	<b>mifuko</b>	a pocket, a bag, pockets
<b>Mgomba</b>	<b>migomba</b>	a banana tree, banana trees

<b>Mguu</b>	<b>miguu</b>	a foot, a leg, feet
<b>Mji</b>	<b>miji</b>	a town, towns
<b>Mkate</b>	<b>mikate</b>	a bread, breads
<b>Mkono</b>	<b>mikono</b>	a hand, an arm, hands
<b>Mlango</b>	<b>milango</b>	a door, doors
<b>Mlima</b>	<b>milima</b>	a mountain, a hill, mountains
<b>Mnara</b>	<b>minara</b>	a minaret, a lighthouse, a tower, minarets
<b>Mnazi</b>	<b>minazi</b>	a coconut tree, coconut trees
<b>Moshi</b>	<b>mioshi</b>	a smoke, smokes
<b>Moto</b>	<b>mioto</b>	a fire, fires
<b>Moyo</b>	<b>mioyo</b>	a heart, hearts
<b>Mpira</b>	<b>mipira</b>	a ball, a pipe, balls
<b>Mshahara</b>	<b>mishahara</b>	a salary, wages
<b>Msikiti</b>	<b>misikiti</b>	a mosque, mosques
<b>Msitu</b>	<b>misitu</b>	a forest, forests
<b>Mswaki</b>	<b>miswaki</b>	a toothbrush, toothbrushes
<b>Mti</b>	<b>miti</b>	a tree, trees
<b>Mtihani</b>	<b>mitihani</b>	an exam, exams
<b>Mto</b>	<b>mito</b>	a river, a pillow, rivers
<b>Mzigo</b>	<b>mizigo</b>	a luggage, a load, loads

The radical starts with a vowel : Singular prefix **Mw-** :

<b>Mwaka</b>	<b>miaka</b>	a year, years
<b>Mwavuli</b>	<b>miavuli</b>	an umbrella, umbrellas
<b>Mwembe</b>	<b>miembe</b>	a mango tree, mango trees
<b>Mwezi</b>	<b>miezi</b>	a month, months
<b>Mwiba</b>	<b>miiba</b>	a thorn, a thorn-bush, thorns
<b>Mwili</b>	<b>miili</b>	a body, bodies
<b>Mwisho</b>	<b>miisho</b>	the end, the ends

Particular cases : Singular prefix **Mu-** :

<b>Muhindi</b>	<b>mihindi</b>	corn, maize
<b>Muhogo</b>	<b>mihogo</b>	cassava
<b>Muwa</b>	<b>miwa</b>	sugar cane

However, many nouns referring to natural elements, to parts of the human body, and to plants, are not included in this gender.

## 2. CLASS AGREEMENTS :

1. Adjective : The adjective takes prefixes of class agreements identical to those of the noun : (See : [Chapter 11 - Concordant Adjectives](#).)

<u>Class 3 :</u>	<b>Mti</b>	<b>mkubwa / mdogo / mzuri / mrefu / mweusi / ...</b>	
	a	big / small / beautiful / high / dark / ...	tree
<u>Class 4 :</u>	<b>Miti</b>	<b>mikubwa / midogo / mizuri / mirefu / myeusi / ...</b>	
		big / small / beautiful / high / dark / ...	trees

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 3 :</u>	<b>Mti</b>	<b>wangu / wako / wake / wetu / wenu / wao</b>	
	=	my / your / his - her - its / our / your / their	tree
<u>Class 4 :</u>	<b>Miti</b>	<b>yangu / yako / yake / yetu / yenu / yao</b>	
	=	my / your / his - her - its / our / your / their	trees



Abiria chungu MZIGO YAKO..  
MARADHI - UMASIKINI - UJINGA - NJAA

Traveller look after YOUR LUGGAGE..  
DISEASE - POVERTY - IDIOCY - HUNGER

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. A river, a mountain, a forest, a tree, a baobab tree, a mango tree, a coconut tree, a thorn-bush, an orange tree, a banana tree, cassava, corn, sugar cane, the smoke, a fire.
- b. Breads, balls, tooth-brushes, bags, games, months, years, wages, towns, the hands, the doors, hearts, exams, coconut trees, umbrellas.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- a. Mikono, miguu, mifereji, mwembe, mnazi, mibuyu, mchungwa, milima, mito, miti, muwa, mifuko, mchele, mchezo, miavuli, midomo, mizigo, msikiti, minara, mtihani.
- b. Cheza mpira ! Angalia mtoto mdogo ! Faulu mtihani ! Chora moyo ! Lima muhindi ! Funga mlango ! Usifungue mlango ! Angalia miiba ! Nunua mkate ! Usile mkate !

**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into English :

- 1. Watoto wanapenda kucheza mpira.
- 2. Mkulima analima michungwa na migomba.
- 3. Mtoto mdogo anapenda kula muwa.
- 4. Baba anafunga mlango.
- 5. Nenda ununue mkate na mchele.
- 6. Wanafunzi wanaandika mitihani yao.
- 7. Watoto wanaangalia moto.
- 8. Mnalima muhindi au muhogo ?
- 9. Vibarua wanapata mishahara yao leo.
- 10. Kipofu hawezi kuona mfereji.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 10 - The Present Indefinite Tense

This tense is used to describe usual or permanent actions, or to state "scientific" truths, that are not necessarily connected to the present time.

This tense is equivalent to the SIMPLE PRESENT in English.

### 1. THE AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Present Indefinite is the infix **-A-** which is inserted between the affirmative subject prefix and the verb radical. Monosyllabic verbs lose the infinitive prefix **KU-** in the Present Indefinite, unlike in the Present Definite.

#### SUBJECT PREFIX + A + VERB RADICAL

MODEL 1 : **KUSOMA** = to read

<b>NI-A-SOMA</b>	-> <b>nasoma</b>	I read
<b>U-A-SOMA</b>	-> <b>wasoma</b>	you read
<b>A-A-SOMA</b>	-> <b>asoma</b>	he / she reads
<b>TU-A-SOMA</b>	-> <b>twasoma</b>	we read
<b>MU-A-SOMA</b>	-> <b>mwasoma</b>	you read
<b>WA-A-SOMA</b>	-> <b>wasoma</b>	they read

MODEL 2 : **KUJA** = to come

<b>NI-A-JA</b>	-> <b>naja</b>	I come
<b>U-A-JA</b>	-> <b>waja</b>	you come
<b>A-A-JA</b>	-> <b>aja</b>	he / she comes
<b>TU-A-JA</b>	-> <b>twaja</b>	we come
<b>MU-A-JA</b>	-> <b>mwaja</b>	you come
<b>WA-A-JA</b>	-> <b>waja</b>	they come

**NOTE :**

The verb **KUWA** (= to be) does not conjugate in the Present Indefinite. It has only one present tense form : **NI**. (See : [Chapter 7](#) and [Chapter 17 - The Verb KUWA.](#))

**2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :**

The Present Indefinite Tense has no specific negative conjugation : we use the negative form of the Present Definite.

(See : [Chapter 8 - The Present Definite Tense](#))

**3. SOME SENTENCES IN THE PRESENT INDEFINITE :**

<b>Wafanya kazi gani ?</b>	What work do you do ?
<b>Nafundisha kifarantsa</b>	I teach French
<b>Mama apika kila siku</b>	Mother cooks everyday
<b>Wanadamu walala usiku</b>	Human beings sleep at night
<b>Ng'ombe wala majani</b>	Cows eat grass
<b>Wanyama waogopa moto</b>	Animals are afraid of the fire
<b>Sisi ni watanzania</b>	We are Tanzanians
<b>Kipofu haoni kitu</b>	The blind man doesn't see anything
<b>Mgonjwa hali, hanywi, alala tu</b>	The patient doesn't eat, doesn't drink, he sleeps only
<b>Sijui kiswahili</b>	I don't know Swahili

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Ku-chafua</b>	to dirty	<b>Ku-piga pasi</b>	to iron
<b>Ku-ficha</b>	to hide	<b>Ku-shona</b>	to sew
<b>Ku-fua nguo</b>	to wash the linen	<b>Ku-tazama</b>	to stare
<b>Ku-ogopa</b>	to be afraid	<b>Ku-tia</b>	to put
<b>Ku-omba</b>	to ask, to beg	<b>Ku-toa</b>	to remove
<b>Ku-panda</b>	to go up, to climb	<b>Ku-uliza</b>	to ask a question

## Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili, using the Present Indefinite :

- a. I learn, you sew, she sweeps, she cooks, they wash the linen, they cultivate, he removes, you listen (Plur), they agree, he buys, they sell, they play, she sleeps, we exchange, we are afraid.
- b. I don't read, I don't take, he doesn't make, he doesn't stop, he doesn't leave, I don't speak, they don't play, they don't ask, you don't sweep, I don't iron, they don't listen, he doesn't agree, they are not afraid, they don't climb, you don't cultivate (Plur).
- c. The old man doesn't work, the fishermen do not cultivate, he doesn't cultivate cassava, the youths do not agree, the cow eats grass, the women wash the linen, you are afraid of the fire (Plur), the men cut the trees, you cultivate maize (plur), the child doesn't like to wash the linen, mother likes sewing, the blind man begs for bread.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Wafanya kazi gani ?
2. Mimi ni mwalimu.
3. Sisi ni wanafunzi watanzania.
4. Ng'ombe wapenda kula majani.
5. Dada afagia kila asubuhi.
6. Vijana wacheza mpira kila jioni.
7. Kibarua apata mshahara wake kila siku.
8. Mtoto mdogo hapendi muhogo.
9. Nanunua mkate kila siku.
10. Wawe waogopa mwalimu wako.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 11 - Concordant Adjectives

"True" adjectives are relatively few in Swahili, but it will be seen later that there are several ways of making adjectival concept words. (See : [Chapter 44](#).)

In Swahili, unlike in English, the adjective is always placed AFTER the noun it qualifies.

We distinguish two main categories of adjectives :

1. Those which take a class prefix to agree with the noun they qualify.
2. Those which remain invariable : they are in their majority loanwords from Arabic.

We will devote this first chapter to the study of the adjectives which agree : the concordant adjectives.

The adjectives are usually introduced without any prefix in the lists of vocabulary. It is therefore advisable to be able to recognize them from their roots.

The agreement prefixes of the adjectives are identical to the class prefixes of the nouns with which they agree.

However, a few modifications of a phonetic nature can be observed, especially with the adjectives whose root starts with a vowel. Therefore, for more transparency, we propose to divide our study of the concordant adjectives into two sub-categories : the adjectives whose root starts with a consonant and those whose root starts with a vowel.

### 1. ADJECTIVES STARTING WITH A CONSONANT :

ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION	ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION
-baya	bad	-kuu	chief, main
-bichi	raw, green, unripe	-kuukuu	used, old
-bivu	ripe	-nene	fat
-bovu	rotten	-nono	big, fat (animal)
-chache	a few, some	-pana	large
-chafu	dirty	-pya	new
-chungu	bitter	-refu	long, high
-dogo	small, little	-shupavu	brave, firm
-fupi	short	-tamu	delicious, sweet
-geni	strange, foreign	-tupu	empty, naked
-gumu	hard	-vivu	lazy
-janja	cunning, crafty	-wivu	jealous
-kali	severe, sharp, cruel	-zee	old
-kavu	dry	-zima	whole, adult
-ke	female	-zito	heavy

<b>-korofi</b>	savage, brutal	<b>-zuri</b>	pretty, beautiful
<b>-kubwa</b>	big		

The prefix agreements for the **M-/WA-** gender (Classes 1 / 2), the **M-/MI-** gender (Classes 3 / 4) and the **KI-/VI-** gender (Classes 7 / 8) are strictly identical to those of the nouns. For the **JI-/MA-** gender (Classes 5 / 6), only the adjective **-PYA** takes the prefix **JI-** in the singular, which makes : **JIPYA**. The other adjectives do not take any prefix in the singular. They all take the prefix **MA-** in the plural.

It is only with the **N-** gender (Classes 9 / 10), that matters get a little more tricky :

1. The adjective takes the prefix **N-** if the adjectival root starts with **D**, **G** ou **Z** :

<b>N-</b>	<b>-DOGO</b>	-> <b>NDOGO</b>	(= small, little)
<b>N-</b>	<b>-GUMU</b>	-> <b>NGUMU</b>	(= hard)
<b>N-</b>	<b>-ZURI</b>	-> <b>NZURI</b>	(= beautiful, nice)

2. The adjective takes the prefix **M-** if the adjectival root starts with **B**, **P** ou **V** :

<b>M-</b>	<b>-BAYA</b>	-> <b>MBAYA</b>	(= bad)
<b>M-</b>	<b>-PYA</b>	-> <b>MPYA</b>	(= new)
<b>M-</b>	<b>-VIVU</b>	-> <b>MVIVU</b>	(= lazy)

3. The adjectives whose roots start with other consonants do not take any prefix, except for **-REFU** which makes : **NDEFU** (= long, high).

#### SOME EXAMPLES :

<b>Mtoto mdogo</b>	a little child	(Class 1)
<b>Watoto wadogo</b>	little children	(Class 2)
<b>Mti mrefu</b>	a high tree	(Class 3)
<b>Miti mirefu</b>	high trees	(Class 4)
<b>Tunda jipya</b>	a new fruit	(Class 5)
<b>Matunda mapya</b>	new fruits	(Class 6)
<b>Chakula kibaya</b>	a bad food	(Class 7)
<b>Vyakula vibaya</b>	bad foods	(Class 8)
<b>Nguo fupi</b>	a short cloth	(Class 9)
<b>Nguo fupi</b>	short clothes	(Class 10)
<b>Uso mzuri</b>	a beautiful face	( <b>U-</b> Gender, Sing, Adj Cl 3)
<b>Nyuso nzuri</b>	beautiful faces	( <b>U-</b> Gender, Plur, Adj Cl 10)
<b>Kusoma kuzuri</b>	studying is good	( <b>KU-</b> Gender)

## 2. ADJECTIVES STARTING WITH A VOWEL :

<b>-aminifu</b>	honest, faithful
<b>-angavu</b>	bright
<b>-ekundu</b>	red
<b>-ema</b>	good, nice
<b>-embamba</b>	thin
<b>-epesi</b>	light, easy
<b>-erevu</b>	malignant, cunning
<b>-eupe</b>	white, clear
<b>-eusi</b>	black, dark
<b>-ingi</b>	much, many, a lot
<b>-ingine</b>	other, another
<b>-ovu</b>	bad
<b>-ume</b>	male

The presence of a vowel at the beginning of the adjectival root leads to modifications of a phonetic nature. Let's examine those changes, gender after gender :

### 1. The M-/WA- Gender :

<u>SINGULAR</u> (Class 1)			
<b>M(u) + A</b>	-> <b>MWA</b>	Ex : <b>Mtu mwaminifu</b>	An honest person
<b>M(u) + E</b>	-> <b>MWE</b>	Ex : <b>Mtoto mwema</b>	A nice child
<b>M(u) + I</b>	-> <b>MWI</b>	Ex : <b>Mtoto mwingine</b>	Another child
<u>PLURAL</u> (Class 2)			
<b>WA + A</b>	-> <b>WA</b>	Ex : <b>Watu waminifu</b>	Honest people
<b>WA + E</b>	-> <b>WE</b>	Ex : <b>Watoto wema</b>	Nice children
<b>WA + I</b>	-> <b>WE</b>	Ex : <b>Watoto wengine</b>	Other children

### 2. The M-/MI- Gender :

<u>SINGULAR</u> (Class 3)			
<b>M(u) + E</b>	-> <b>MWE</b>	Ex : <b>Mti mweusi</b>	A dark tree
<b>M(u) + I</b>	-> <b>MWI</b>	Ex : <b>Mkate mwingine</b>	Another bread
<u>PLURAL</u> (Class 4)			
<b>MI + E</b>	-> <b>MYE</b>	Ex : <b>Miti myeusi</b>	Dark trees
<b>MI + I</b>	-> <b>MI</b>	Ex : <b>Mikate mingine</b>	Other breads

3. The **JI-/MA-** Gender :

<u><b>SINGULAR</b></u> (Class 5)			
<b>JI + E</b>	-> <b>JE</b>	Ex : <b>Jua jekundu</b>	A red sun
<b>JI + I</b>	-> <b>JI</b>	Ex : <b>Jua jingi</b>	A lot of sun
<u><b>PLURAL</b></u> (Class 6)			
<b>MA + E</b>	-> <b>ME</b>	Ex : <b>Mabasi mekundu</b>	Red buses
<b>MA + I</b>	-> <b>ME</b>	Ex : <b>Mabasi mengine</b>	Other buses

EXCEPTION : **JI + INGINE** -> **LENGINE** (= another)

4. The **KI-/VI-** Gender :

<u><b>SINGULAR</b></u> (Class 7)			
<b>KI + E</b>	-> <b>CHE</b>	Ex : <b>Kiti cheusi</b>	A black chair
<b>KI + I</b>	-> <b>KI</b>	Ex : <b>Chakula kingi</b>	A lot of food
<u><b>PLURAL</b></u> (Class 8)			
<b>VI + E</b>	-> <b>VY</b>	Ex : <b>Viti vyeusi</b>	Black chairs
<b>VI + I</b>	-> <b>VI</b>	Ex : <b>Vyakula vingine</b>	Other foods

5. The **N-** Gender :

<u><b>SINGULAR</b></u> (Class 9)			
<b>N + E</b>	-> <b>NYE</b>	Ex : <b>Nguo nyeupe</b>	A white cloth
<b>N + I</b>	-> <b>NYI</b>	Ex : <b>Nguo Nyingine</b>	Another cloth
<u><b>PLURAL</b></u> (Class 10)			
<b>N + E</b>	-> <b>NYE</b>	Ex : <b>Nguo nyeupe</b>	White clothes
<b>N + I</b>	-> <b>NYI</b>	Ex : <b>Nguo Nyingine</b>	Other clothes

EXCEPTION : **N + EMA** -> **NJEMA** (= good)

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. Big, fat, small, short, heavy, light, dirty, hard, sweet, bitter, new, lazy, red, black, white, malignant, main, raw, bad, good.
- b. A cunning man, an honest child, a few people, a severe teacher, a lazy young man, a jealous woman, a nice young girl, adult people, a high mountain, sweet sugar cane, beautiful maize, a thin body, dirty hands, a whole month, a black umbrella, long legs, a white smoke, a red fire, a difficult exam, a good heart.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- a. **Mfupi, nzito, mvivu, kavu, kigumu, kidogo, machafu, mbichi, mkali, jipya, makubwa, nzuri, njema, lengine, mzee, nyekundu, waminifu, mwangavu, chepesi, tupu.**
- b. **Mtoto mvivu, mfuko mtupu, watu wazima, wanyama wakali, wamasai wakubwa, nguo mpya, mtu mweusi, mji mkuu, miguu mifupi, wazungu wageni, mikono mipana, mpira mdogo, magari machache, kitu kingine, chakula kitamu, muhindi mbichi, mtoto mbaya, wanafunzi wengi, mwizi mwovu, nguo fupi.**

**EXERCISE 3 :** Put the following phrases in the plural :

**Gari jipya, nguo nyekundu, kiti kidogo, uso mwema, mwanamke mkali, mto mpana, mti mrefu, mtu mzima, mvulana mvivu, mnyama mnono, mji mkubwa, mgonjwa mwingine, mlango mkuu, mshahara mdogo, mkate mwingi, moyo mzito, msitu mweusi, mkono mchafu, gari bovu, chakula kichache.**

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 12 - Invariable Adjectives

Most of the invariable adjectives are borrowed from the Arabic. Like the concordant adjectives, they are always placed AFTER the noun. A few of them can be both noun and adjective. For example : **maskini** = poor, a poor, and **tajiri (ma-)** = rich, a rich person.

### 1. THE MOST COMMON INVARIABLE ADJECTIVES :

ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION	ADJECTIVE	TRANSLATION
<b>bora</b>	excellent, better	<b>manjano</b>	yellow
<b>bure</b>	useless, free	<b>maskini</b>	poor
<b>ghali</b>	expensive	<b>muhimu</b>	important
<b>haba</b>	few, little	<b>ovyo</b>	bad, valueless
<b>hafifu</b>	weak	<b>rahisi</b>	cheap, easy
<b>hai</b>	alive	<b>rasmi</b>	official
<b>halali</b>	pure, legitimate	<b>safi</b>	clean
<b>haramu</b>	forbidden	<b>sahihi</b>	correct
<b>hodari</b>	brave, intelligent, clever	<b>sawa</b>	equal, same
<b>imara</b>	strong	<b>shwari</b>	calm
<b>kamili</b>	complete, exact	<b>tajiri</b>	rich
<b>kijani</b>	green	<b>tayari</b>	ready
<b>kweli</b>	true	<b>tele</b>	plenty
<b>laini</b>	soft, smooth	<b>wazi</b>	open, obvious
<b>maalum</b>	special		

### 2. SOME EXAMPLES :

<b>Bwana tajiri</b>	A rich man
<b>Mtoto maskini</b>	A poor child
<b>Kazi bure / ovyo</b>	A useless / slapdash piece of work
<b>Safari rasmi</b>	An official journey
<b>Wanafunzi hodari</b>	Clever pupils
<b>Mambo muhimu</b>	Important matters
<b>Chakula ni haba</b>	There is little food

<b>Chakula ni tele</b>	There is plenty of food
<b>Chakula tayari</b>	The food (is) ready
<b>Mlango ni wazi</b>	The door is open
<b>Kila kitu sawa</b>	Everything is equal / fine
<b>Habari gani ? - Safi sana !</b>	How are you ? - Very fine !
<b>Habari za kazi ? - Shwari !</b>	What about your work ? - It's O.K. !

### 3. THE COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY :

To translate "more than" we use in Swahili the expression **KULIKO** (= where there is), or alternatively **KUZIDI** (= to increase), **KUPITA** (= to overtake), or **KUSHINDA** (= to defeat). All these different expressions are equivalent and interchangeable.

#### EXAMPLES :

**Ali ni mrefu kuliko Juma**

Ali is taller than Juma (*Ali is tall more than Juma*)

**Nguo yangu ni safi kupita yako**

My cloth is cleaner than yours (*... is clean more than yours*)

**Abdallah ni hodari kushinda Omari**

Abdallah is more intelligent than Omari (*... is intelligent more than Omari*)

**Zanzibar ni mji mzuri kuzidi Dar es Salaam**

Zanzibar is a more beautiful town than Dar es Salaam (*... is a town beautiful more than Dar es Salaam*)

#### SAYING :

**Damu nzito kuliko maji**

### VOCABULARY

<b>Ku-amka</b>	to wake up	<b>Ku-nuka</b>	to smell bad
<b>Ku-anza</b>	to start, to begin	<b>Ku-nukia</b>	to smell good
<b>Ku-futa</b>	to wipe	<b>Ku-ota</b>	to grow, to dream
<b>Ku-gonga</b>	to hit, to knock	<b>Ku-sahau</b>	to forget

**Ku-hitaji** to need  
**Ku-lipa** to pay

**Ku-tosha** to be sufficient  
**Ku-vaa** to wear

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

A poor child, rich travellers, an expensive car, a useless piece of work, an important job, an open door, forbidden games, a clever pupil, an official journey, a clean river, a weak patient, a ready luggage, an easy job, important matters, forbidden food, cheap bread, plenty of food, better food, complete matters, clean clothes.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

Shwari, sawa, laini, kweli, haramu, halali, bora, bure, tayari, tajiri, maskini, ghali, rahisi, imara, hafifu, rasmi, tele, haba, wazi, muhimu, ovyo, manjano, kijani, hai, hodari.

### EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Mizigo yako (ni) tayari.
2. Mwalimu anaanza safari rasmi.
3. Kipofu mzee anaomba mkate.
4. Yeye ni maskini. Hawezi kulipa.
5. Anavaa nguo safi.
6. Usifanye kazi bure !
7. Hamisi ni mwanafunzi hodari.
8. Chakula (ni) tayari. Karibu chakula !
9. Kila siku (ni) sawa.
10. Chakula ni haba. Hakitoshi.
11. Tunahitaji mikate mengine.
12. Amina ni msichana mwema kuliko Fatuma.
13. Nairobi ni mji mkubwa kupita Dar es Salaam.
14. Mkate wako ni bora kuliko wangu.
15. Habari za kazi ? - Shwari !



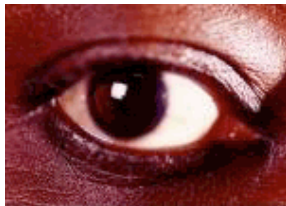


## Chapter 13 - The JI-/MA- Gender

The **JI-/MA-** gender (Classes 5 / 6) includes nouns of persons, nouns of manufactured objects, of parts of the human body, of fruits and natural products, nouns of built or natural places, abstract concepts, etc.. They are often loanwords, particularly of Arabic origin.

This gender is very particular, for although it is named "**JI-/MA-**", only a very small number of nouns take the prefix **JI-** in the singular.

The majority of the nouns of class 5 (singular) do not have a prefix, while some other nouns only exist in class 6 (plural).



Cl 5 (Singular) :

prefix **JI-**  
prefix **Ø-**

**JICHO** = an eye, the eye  
**TUNDA** = a fruit, the fruit

Cl 6 (Plural) :

prefix **MA-**

**MACHO** = eyes, the eyes  
**MATUNDA** = fruits, the fruits

### 1. NOUNS TAKING THE PREFIX JI- IN THE SINGULAR :

NOUN	TRANSLATION	NOUN	TRANSLATION
<b>Jicho, macho</b>	an eye, eyes	<b>Jambo, mambo</b>	a matter, matters
<b>Jiko, meko</b>	a cooker, cookers	<b>Jiwe, mawe</b>	a stone, stones
<b>Jino, meno</b>	a tooth, teeth		

### 2. NOUNS WHICH EXIST ONLY IN THE PLURAL :

NOUN	TRANSLATION	NOUN	TRANSLATION
<b>Maafa</b>	a misfortune	<b>Majivu</b>	ashes
<b>Mafuta</b>	oil	<b>Matata</b>	problems
<b>Mahindi</b>	corn (on the cob)	<b>Matusi</b>	insults

**Majani**  
**Maji**

grass  
water

**Mavi**  
**Maziwa**

excrement  
milk



### 3. OTHER NOUNS GROUPED BY TOPICS :

#### 1. MANUFACTURED OBJECTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Blanketi	mablanketi	a blanket, blankets
Debe	madebe	a 4 gallon tin can
Dirisha	madirisha	a window, windows
Gari	magari	a car, cars (also in classes 9 / 10)
Gazeti	magazeti	a newspaper, newspapers
Godoro	magodoro	a mattress, mattresses
Gunia	magunia	a coarse bag, a sack
Jembe	majembe	a hoe, hoes
Sanduku	masanduku	a box, a trunk, boxes
Shoka	mashoka	an axe, axes

#### 2. FRUITS, NATURAL PRODUCTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Chungwa	machungwa	an orange, oranges
Dafu	madafu	a coconut with milk, coconuts
Embe	maembe	a mango, mangoes
Jani	majani	a leaf, leaves
Limau	malimau	a lemon, lemons
Nanasi	mananasi	a pineapple, pineapples

<b>Papai</b>	<b>mapapai</b>	a pawpaw, pawpaws
<b>Tunda</b>	<b>matunda</b>	a fruit, fruits
<b>Yai</b>	<b>mayai</b>	an egg, eggs

### 3. NATURAL OR BUILT PLACES :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Baraza</b>	<b>mabaraza</b>	a veranda, verandas
<b>Daraja</b>	<b>madaraja</b>	a bridge, bridges
<b>Duka</b>	<b>maduka</b>	a shop, shops
<b>Pori</b>	<b>mapori</b>	the bush
<b>Shamba</b>	<b>mashamba</b>	a field, a farm, fields
<b>Soko</b>	<b>masoko</b>	a market, markets

### 4. NOUNS OF PEOPLE :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Bibi</b>	<b>mabibi</b>	young lady, grandmother, ladies
<b>Bwana</b>	<b>mabwana</b>	Sir, master, gentlemen
<b>Fundi</b>	<b>mafundi</b>	a craftsman, craftsmen
<b>Karani</b>	<b>makarani</b>	a clerk, clerks
<b>Rais</b>	<b>marais</b>	a president, presidents
<b>Seremala</b>	<b>maseremala</b>	a carpenter, carpenters
<b>Shangazi</b>	<b>mashangazi</b>	an aunt (paternal), aunts
<b>Tajiri</b>	<b>matajiri</b>	a rich person, rich people
<b>Waziri</b>	<b>mawaziri</b>	a minister, ministers

### 5. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Bega</b>	<b>mabega</b>	a shoulder, shoulders
<b>Goti</b>	<b>magoti</b>	a knee, knees
<b>Sikio</b>	<b>masikio</b>	an ear, ears
<b>Tumbo</b>	<b>matumbo</b>	the stomach, the bowells

### 6. ABSTRACT OR CONCRETE CONCEPTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Jina	majina	a name, names
Jua	majua	the sun, suns
Kosa	makosa	a mistake, mistakes
Neno	maneno	a word, words
Shauri	mashauri	an advice, advices
Somo	masomo	a lesson, lessons
Wazo	mawazo	a thought, thoughts
Zungumzo	mazungumzo	a conversation, conversations

#### 4. THE AUGMENTATIVE PREFIX JI- :

The prefix **Ji-** can possess an augmentative value. In that case, we replace the normal noun class prefix with the prefix **Ji-** (or the prefix **Ø-** in some cases). In the plural, the prefix **MA-** is placed in front of the augmentative prefix.

	ORIGIN	SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Mdudu	(insect)	-> Dudu	madudu	a large insect, large insects
Mtu	(person)	-> Jitu	majitu	a giant, giants
Nyoka	(snake)	-> Joka	majoka	a large snake, large snakes
Nyumba	(house)	-> Jumba	majumba	a building, buildings
Moto	(fire)	-> Joto	majoto	the heat

#### 5. CLASS AGREEMENTS :

1. Adjective : The adjective takes prefixes of class agreements identical to those of the noun :  
(See : [Chapter 11 - Concordant Adjectives](#).)

<u>Class 5 :</u>	<b>Tunda</b>	<b>kubwa / dogo / zuri / baya / jipya / ...</b>	
	a	big / small / beautiful / bad / new / ...	fruit
<u>Class 6 :</u>	<b>Matunda</b>	<b>makubwa / madogo / mazuri / mabaya / mapya / ...</b>	
		big / small / beautiful / bad / new / ...	fruits

2. Possessive Adjectives :

<u>Class 5 :</u>	<b>Tunda</b>	<b>langu / lako / lake / letu / lenu / lao</b>
------------------	--------------	--

= my / your / his - her / our / your / their fruit

Class 6 : **Matunda** **yangu / yako / yake / yetu / yenu / yao**  
 = my / your / his - her / our / your / their fruits

NOTE : The adjective that qualifies a class 5 / 6 noun of person, must take class 1 / 2 agreements.

<b>Karani mzuri</b> (instead of <b>karani zuri</b> )	A good clerk
<b>Makarani wazuri</b> (instead of <b>makarani mazuri</b> )	Good clerks
<b>Yule bwana mkubwa</b>	That big man
<b>Wale mabwana wakubwa</b>	Those big men

## VOCABULARY

To translate : "in, on, at" : the suffix "-NI"

<b>Barazani</b>	on the veranda	<b>Mlangoni</b>	at the door
<b>Dukani</b>	in the shop	<b>Mlimani</b>	on the mountain
<b>Jikoni</b>	in the kitchen	<b>Mtoni</b>	in the river
<b>Mfukoni</b>	in the bag	<b>Porini</b>	in the bush
<b>Mkononi</b>	in the hand	<b>Shambani</b>	on the farm
<b>Mjini</b>	downtown	<b>Sokoni</b>	at the market

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. Corn, oil, water, mangoes, lemons, eggs, oranges, pawpaws, milk, a can, a coarse bag, a hoe, newspapers, an axe, cars, a shop, a market, craftsmen, ministers, clerks.
- b. I drink water, I eat corn, he takes a pawpaw, he sells oil, buy oranges ! Take blankets ! Don't forget the newspaper ! Drink your milk ! They work on the farm, they play on the veranda, she eats in the kitchen, mind the large snake ! Cook some eggs ! Cut the pineapple ! Tell your name !

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- a. Rais, shangazi, makarani, magoti, tumbo, masikio, maneno, mawazo, sokoni, shambani, porini, majani, blanketi, dirisha, jembe, jicho, jino, jina, jikoni, makosa.
- b. Waziri mkuu, maziwa mazuri, godoro jipya, blanketi manjano, daraja refu, jua kali, mazungumzo marefu, mapapai madogo, limau bovu, mayai machache, mahindi tele, matusi ovyo, bibi mkali, fundi hodari, baraza kubwa, shauri lako, jina langu, mawazo yangu, joka mrefu, machungwa mabichi.

**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into English :

- 1. Nenda dukani ununue maziwa !
- 2. Mama anakwenda jikoni kupika chakula.
- 3. Watoto wapenda kula maembe mabichi.
- 4. Maseremala wanafanya kazi barazani.
- 5. Leo sokoni, machungwa ni ghali kuliko maembe.
- 6. Ninahitaji blanketi safi na godoro jipya.
- 7. Mama wanauza mayai na mafuta sokoni.
- 8. "Bibi Majivu" afanya kazi chafu tele.
- 9. Mkunyweni maji safi tu, msinywe maji machafu !
- 10. Naogopa joka kali porini !

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 14 - The Past Perfect Tense

We use the PAST PERFECT to speak of specific actions that have already taken place (for example : I have eaten, I have understood, I have been, etc...), or to describe a state (for example : he is sitting, he is dead, he is sleeping, etc...). It is usually translated by a Present Perfect in English.

### 1. THE PAST PERFECT - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The marker of the Past Perfect is the infix **-ME-** placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root :

**SUBJECT PREFIX + ME + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL 1 : KUFANYA = to do

<b>NI-ME-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; nimefanya</b>	I have done
<b>U-ME-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; umefanya</b>	you have done
<b>A-ME-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; amefanya</b>	he / she has done
<b>TU-ME-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tumefanya</b>	we have done
<b>M-ME-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mmefanya</b>	you have done
<b>WA-ME-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; wamefanya</b>	they have done

NOTE : The verbs of Arabic origin behave exactly like the verbs of Bantu origin ; while the monosyllabic verbs, keep the **KU-** of the infinitive.

MODEL 2 : KWENDA = to go

<b>NI-ME-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; nimekwenda</b>	I have gone / been
<b>U-ME-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; umekwenda</b>	you have gone / been
<b>A-ME-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; amekwenda</b>	he / she has gone / been
<b>TU-ME-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; tumekwenda</b>	we have gone / been
<b>M-ME-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; mmekwenda</b>	you have gone / been
<b>WA-ME-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; wamekwenda</b>	they have gone / been

**REINFORCEMENT :**

To insist on the fact that the action already took place, we can insert the verbal root **sha** (from the verb **kwisha** = to finish) between the tense marker of the past perfect and the verb radical.

**EXAMPLES :****Nimeshakwenda Tanzania.**I have already been to Tanzania.**Wameshafanya mtihani wao.**They have already done their exam.**2. THE PAST PERFECT - NEGATIVE FORM :**

The negative form of the Past Perfect describes a situation which has not yet taken place, or a state which has not been carried out yet.

The marker of the Present Perfect negative is the infix **-JA-** placed between the negative subject prefix and the verbal root.

**NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + JA + VERB RADICAL****MODEL 1 : KUFANYA = to do**

<b>SI-JA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; sijafanya</b>	I haven't done
<b>HU-JA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hujafanya</b>	you haven't done
<b>HA-JA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hajafanya</b>	he / she hasn't done
<b>HATU-JA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatujafanya</b>	we haven't done
<b>HAM-JA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hamjafanya</b>	you haven't done
<b>HAWA-JA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hawajafanya</b>	they haven't done

**NOTE :**

Contrary to what occurs in the Past Perfect affirmative, the monosyllabic verbs lose the **KU-** of the infinitive in the negative form.

**MODEL 2 : KWENDA = to go**

<b>SI-JA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; sijaenda</b>	I haven't gone / been yet
<b>HU-JA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; hujaenda</b>	You haven't gone / been yet
<b>HA-JA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; hajaenda</b>	He / she hasn't gone / been yet
<b>HATU-JA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatujaenda</b>	We haven't gone / been yet
<b>HAM-JA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; hamjaenda</b>	You haven't gone / been yet
<b>HAWA-JA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; hawajaenda</b>	they haven't gone / been yet



**REINFORCEMENT :**

To insist on the fact that the action hasn't taken place yet, we can use the word **bado**, which will be placed before or after the verb in the Past Perfect negative.

**EXAMPLES :**

**Amina amerudi ? - Ajarudi bado.** or : **Bado !**  
= Has Amina come back ? - She hasn't come back yet.

**Umeshakula ? - Sijala bado.**  
= Have you already eaten ? - I haven't eaten yet.

**Bado hatujapanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro**  
= We have not yet climbed on Mount Kilimanjaro.

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Ku-acha</b>	to leave, to abandon	<b>Ku-maliza</b>	to finish
<b>Ku-chelewa</b>	to be late	<b>ku-ondoka</b>	to leave, to go away
<b>Ku-choka</b>	to be tired	<b>Ku-pona</b>	to get better
<b>Ku-iba</b>	to steal	<b>Ku-potea</b>	to lose
<b>Ku-iva</b>	to ripen, to be cooked	<b>Ku-vuna</b>	to reap, to harvest
<b>Ku-kosa</b>	to miss, to be mistaken	<b>Ku-zoea</b>	to be accustomed

Cross Word Puzzle

**EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. I am cured, he is sitting, he has gone, they have come, you are accustomed, he is lost, she has arrived, you have come back, we have stayed, I am tired, you have fallen, she has cleaned, we have finished, he is dead, he has stopped, you have said, it's finished (CI 9), he has damaged, you are mistaken, we are late.
- b. He hasn't arrived yet, I haven't seen yet, he hasn't gone yet, I'm not cured yet, they are not yet ripe (CI 6), I am not accustomed yet, she hasn't swept yet, they haven't stolen yet, you haven't done yet, you haven't been yet.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Watoto wameamka asubuhi.
2. Dudu ameingia jikoni.
3. Sijanunua mkate leo.
4. Mwizi ameiba mahindi shambani usiku.
5. Bado sijapata mshahara wangu.
6. Mgonjwa amelala, ajapona bado.
7. Wazazi wangu wameketi barazani.
8. Chakula tayari ? Wageni hawajala !
9. Mama amekwisha pika chakula asubuhi.
10. Sijui kiswahili sana. Sijaenda Tanzania bado.
11. Mmekwenda Zanzibar ? - Ndiyo !
12. Lakini hatujapanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 15 - The Demonstratives

There is no distinction between demonstrative adjectives and demonstrative pronouns in Swahili.

The demonstrative must agree with the noun to which it refers, but it doesn't take the same prefixes as the noun. Its prefixes (or suffixes) of agreement are of pronominal type.

### 1. THREE CATEGORIES OF DEMONSTRATIVES :

There are three kinds of demonstratives in Swahili :

#### 1. THE DEMONSTRATIVE OF PROXIMITY :

It corresponds to : this, these, for the demonstrative adjectives ;  
and to : this one, these ones, for the demonstrative pronouns.

**FORMATION :** It starts with **H-** and ends in the subject prefix corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees. The intermediate vowel is identical to the final vowel.

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>MTU</b>	(Class 1)	Subject prefix <b>YU-</b> (NOT <b>A-</b> )	<b>H.. - YU -&gt; HUYU</b>
<b>WATU</b>	(Class 2)	Subject prefix <b>WA-</b>	<b>H.. - WA -&gt; HAWA</b>
<b>MTI</b>	(Class 3)	Subject prefix <b>U-</b>	<b>H.. - U -&gt; HUU</b>
<b>MITI</b>	(Class 4)	Subject prefix <b>I-</b>	<b>H.. - I -&gt; HII</b>
<b>TUNDA</b>	(Class 5)	Subject prefix <b>LI-</b>	<b>H.. - LI -&gt; HILI</b>
<b>MATUNDA</b>	(Class 6)	Subject prefix <b>YA-</b>	<b>H.. - YA -&gt; HAYA</b>

#### 2. THE DEMONSTRATIVE OF DISTANCE :

It corresponds to : that, those, for the demonstrative adjectives ;  
or to : that one, those ones, for the demonstrative pronouns.

**FORMATION :** It starts with the subject prefix corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees, and ends in **-LE**.

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>MTU</b>	(Class 1)	Subject prefix <b>YU-</b> (NOT <b>A-</b> )	<b>YU - LE -&gt; YULE</b>
<b>WATU</b>	(Class 2)	Subject prefix <b>WA-</b>	<b>WA - LE -&gt; WALE</b>
<b>MTI</b>	(Class 3)	Subject prefix <b>U-</b>	<b>U - LE -&gt; ULE</b>
<b>MITI</b>	(Class 4)	Subject prefix <b>I-</b>	<b>I - LE -&gt; ILE</b>
<b>TUNDA</b>	(Class 5)	Subject prefix <b>LI-</b>	<b>LI - LE -&gt; LILE</b>

**MATUNDA**

(Class 6)

Subject prefix **YA-****YA - LE -> YALE****3. THE DEMONSTRATIVE OF REFERENCE :**

It is used to designate the person or the thing which has already been spoken about. It can be translated by :  
this, that ;

Or by : this one, that one.

**FORMATION :** It borrows its first syllable from the demonstrative of proximity, and ends in the suffix **"-O"** of reference corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees.  
(See : [Chapter 31](#).)

**EXAMPLES :**

<b>MTU</b>	(Class 1)	"-O" of reference <b>-YO</b>	<b>HU - YO -&gt; HUYO</b>
<b>WATU</b>	(Class 2)	"-O" of reference <b>-O</b>	<b>HA - O -&gt; HAO</b>
<b>MTI</b>	(Class 3)	"-O" of reference <b>-O</b>	<b>HU - O -&gt; HUO</b>
<b>MITI</b>	(Class 4)	"-O" of reference <b>-YO</b>	<b>HI - YO -&gt; HIYO</b>
<b>TUNDA</b>	(Class 5)	"-O" of reference <b>-LO</b>	<b>HI - LO -&gt; HILO</b>
<b>MATUNDA</b>	(Class 6)	"-O" of reference <b>-YO</b>	<b>HA - YO -&gt; HAYO</b>

**TABLE OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES / PRONOUNS :**

CLASSES / NOUNS	DEMONSTRATIVES		
	PROXIMITY	DISTANCE	REFERENCE
Class 1 <b>Mtu</b>	<b>HUYU</b>	<b>YULE</b>	<b>HUYO</b>
Class 2 <b>Watu</b>	<b>HAWA</b>	<b>WALE</b>	<b>HAO</b>
Class 3 <b>Mti</b>	<b>HUU</b>	<b>ULE</b>	<b>HUO</b>
Class 4 <b>Miti</b>	<b>HII</b>	<b>ILE</b>	<b>HIYO</b>
Class 5 <b>Tunda</b>	<b>HILI</b>	<b>LILE</b>	<b>HILO</b>
Class 6 <b>Matunda</b>	<b>HAYA</b>	<b>YALE</b>	<b>HAYO</b>
Class 7 <b>Kiti</b>	<b>HIKI</b>	<b>KILE</b>	<b>HICHO</b>
Class 8 <b>Viti</b>	<b>HIVI</b>	<b>VILE</b>	<b>HIVYO</b>
Class 9 <b>Nguo</b>	<b>HII</b>	<b>ILE</b>	<b>HIYO</b>
Class 10 <b>Nguo</b>	<b>HIZI</b>	<b>ZILE</b>	<b>HIZO</b>
Class 11/14 <b>Uso</b>	<b>HUU</b>	<b>ULE</b>	<b>HUO</b>
Class 10 <b>Nyuso</b>	<b>HIZI</b>	<b>ZILE</b>	<b>HIZO</b>

**2. PLACE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE IN THE SENTENCE :**

- a. The Demonstrative of proximity is usually placed at the end of the nominal group, after the noun and its adjectives. But it can also be placed in the immediate vicinity of the noun.

EXAMPLES :**Wanafunzi hawa**

These pupils

**Wanafunzi hodari hawa**

These intelligent pupils

**Wanafunzi hodari wachache hawa**

These few intelligent pupils

**Kula chakula hiki kizuri !**

Eat this good food !

**Lete mizigo hii mizito !**

Bring this heavy luggage !

- b. The Demonstrative of distance is placed before or after the noun. When there is a possessive adjective, the demonstrative is placed in front of the noun.

EXAMPLES :**Wale wanafunzi**

Those pupils

**Wanafunzi wale hodari**

Those intelligent pupils

**Duka lile kubwa**

That big shop

**Lile shuka langu**

My sheet over there

- c. The Demonstrative of reference is placed close to the noun, preferably in front. When there is a possessive adjective, the demonstrative must be placed after it.

EXAMPLES :**Hilo tunda kubwa**

This big fruit

**Watoto hao wadogo**

These small children

**Watoto wao hao**

Their children here

**Shuka langu hilo**

My sheet here

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Bawa (ma-)</b>	a wing, wings
<b>Kaa (ma-)</b>	charcoal
<b>Kuti (ma-)</b>	a palm, palms
<b>Pera (ma-)</b>	a guava, guavas
<b>Shuka (ma-)</b>	a sheet, sheets
<b>Tawi (ma-)</b>	a branch, branches

<b>Tofali (ma-)</b>	a brick, bricks
<b>Tuta (ma-)</b>	a ridge
<b>Ua (ma-)</b>	a flower, flowers
<b>Wingu (ma-)</b>	a cloud, clouds
<b>Zao (ma-)</b>	a crop, crops
<b>Ziwa (ma-)</b>	a lake, lakes

Cross Word Puzzle

**EXERCISES**

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. [Demonstrative of proximity] This child, these youths, this young girl, this teacher, this idiot, these workers, this mountain, this town, that luggage, this bag, these trees, this ditch, this door, this flower, these palms, these bricks, this lake, these guavas, these oranges, these pineapples, this corn, these clothes, these chairs, this food, this face.
- b. [Demonstrative of distance] Those travellers, that drunkard, that man, that uncle, those masais, that grandmother, that driver, those friends, that clerk, those banana trees, those coconut trees, that river, that year, those sugar canes, those cities, that rice, that window, those cars, that market, those mangoes, that coarse sack, that mattress, those eggs, those fields, those chairs.
- c. [Demonstrative of reference] This little boy, this rich white man, this old teacher, these intelligent children, this lazy pupil, this important city, this black bag, these large baobab trees, These dirty hands of yours, these unpleasant children of theirs, this beautiful car of yours, take this little chair ! Look at this large poisonous snake ! Take these beautiful flowers ! Buy this charcoal ! Do not take our palms here !

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

**Mlango huu, kiti hiki, mtoto huyu, bawa hili, wanaume hawa, matuta haya, nguo hizi, mama huyu, gari lile, mahindi yale, michungwa ile, mfano ule, miavuli ile, nguo ile, ziwa lilo, matofali yayo, tawi lilo, mawingu yale, mwizi huyo, wadudu hao, mwanadamu huyu, nguo hizo, uso huo, viti hivi, chakula hiki.**

**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into English :

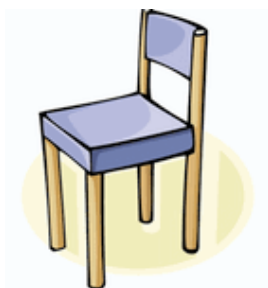
1. Kamata mwizi huyu !
  2. Nunua ule mkate mzuri !
  3. Uza lile gari lako bovu !
  4. Lete mzigo mzito huu !
  5. Kula mapera haya mazuri !
  6. Wanafunzi hodari hawa wamefaulu mtihani.
  7. Duka lile dogo lauza maziwa safi.
  8. Usiseme yale maneno ovyo !
  9. Bwana amenunua gari lile jipya.
  10. Angalia lile joka kubwa !
-



## Chapter 16 - The KI-/VI- Gender

The **KI-/VI-** gender (Classes 7 / 8) is a gender of things, just like the **M-/WA-** gender is a gender of people. However, it is not as exclusive, for beside manufactured objects, it also includes nouns of people, parts of the human body, natural products, nouns of places that are built or not, abstract or concrete concepts, etc...

It is in class 7 (in the singular only) that the names of languages are to be found, and the prefix **KI-** is also used as a diminutive.



Cl 7 (Singular) : prefix **KI-**

Cl 8 (Plural) : prefix **VI-**

**KITI** = a / the chair

**VITI** = chairs, the chairs

In front of a vowel, the singular prefix **KI-** becomes **CH-** :

**CHAKULA** = a / the food

the plural prefix **VI-** becomes **VY-** :

**VYAKULA** = foods / the foods

There are however some exceptions to his rule : **Kiatu** (= shoe), **Kioo** (= mirror), etc..

### 1. NOUNS GROUPED BY TOPICS :

#### 1. MANUFACTURED OBJECTS :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
Chombo	vyombo	a container, a utensil, containers
Chuma	vyuma	iron, irons
Kiatu	viatu	a shoe, shoes
Kiberiti	viberiti	a match, matches

<b>Kidonge</b>	<b>vidonge</b>	a pill, pills
<b>Kijiko</b>	<b>vijiko</b>	a spoon, spoons
<b>Kikapu</b>	<b>vikapu</b>	a basket, baskets
<b>Kiko</b>	<b>viko</b>	a pipe, pipes
<b>Kikombe</b>	<b>vikombe</b>	a cup, cups
<b>Kioo</b>	<b>vioo</b>	a mirror, mirrors
<b>Kipande</b>	<b>vipande</b>	a piece, pieces
<b>Kisu</b>	<b>visu</b>	a knife, knives
<b>Kitabu</b>	<b>vitabu</b>	a book, books
<b>Kitambaa</b>	<b>vitambaa</b>	a piece of cloth, fabrics
<b>Kitanda</b>	<b>vitanda</b>	a bed, beds
<b>Kiti</b>	<b>viti</b>	a chair, chairs
<b>Kitu</b>	<b>vitu</b>	a thing, things

## 2. NATURAL PRODUCTS, FOOD :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Chakula</b>	<b>vyakula</b>	food, foods
<b>Kiazi</b>	<b>viazi</b>	a potato, potatoes
<b>Kitunguu</b>	<b>vitunguu</b>	an onion, onions

## 3. NATURAL OR BUILT PLACES :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Choo</b>	<b>vyoo</b>	a toilet, toilets
<b>Chumba</b>	<b>vyumba</b>	a room, rooms
<b>Chuo</b>	<b>vyuo</b>	a school, a college
<b>Kibanda</b>	<b>vibanda</b>	a hut, huts
<b>Kijiji</b>	<b>vijiji</b>	a village, villages
<b>Kilima</b>	<b>vilima</b>	a hill, hills
<b>Kisima</b>	<b>visima</b>	a well, wells
<b>Kisiwa</b>	<b>visiwa</b>	an island, islands
<b>Kiwanja</b>	<b>viwanja</b>	a piece of land, lands

## 4. NOUNS OF PEOPLE :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
-----------------	---------------	--------------------



<b>Kibarua</b>	<b>vibarua</b>	a day laborer, day laborers
<b>Kijana</b>	<b>vijana</b>	a youth, youths
<b>Kipofu</b>	<b>vipofu</b>	a blind man, blind men
<b>Kiwete</b>	<b>viwete</b>	a handicapped person
<b>Kiziwi</b>	<b>viziwi</b>	a deaf person, deaf persons

#### 5. NOUNS OF ANIMALS :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Kiboko</b>	<b>viboko</b>	an hippopotamus, hippos
<b>Kifaru</b>	<b>vifarua</b>	a rhinoceros, rhinoceroses
<b>Kipepeo</b>	<b>vipepeo</b>	a butterfly, butterflies

#### 6. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Kichwa</b>	<b>vichwa</b>	a head, heads
<b>Kidole</b>	<b>vidole</b>	a finger, fingers
<b>Kidonda</b>	<b>vidonda</b>	an ulceration, ulcerations
<b>Kifua</b>	<b>vifua</b>	the chest, chests

#### 7. ABSTRACT OR CONCRETE CONCEPTS :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Cheo</b>	<b>vyeo</b>	a rank, a row, ranks
<b>Cheti</b>	<b>vyeti</b>	a certificate, certificates
<b>Chama</b>	<b>vyama</b>	a party, an association, parties

#### 8. NAMES OF LANGUAGES (Class 7 only) :

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>TRANSLATION</b>
<b>Kiarabu</b>	Arabic
<b>Kifaransa</b>	French
<b>Kihindi</b>	Indian, Hindi
<b>Kiingereza</b>	English

Kiswahili

Swahili

## 2. THE DIMINUTIVE PREFIX KI- :

The prefix **KI-** can have a diminutive value. To that effect the ordinary class prefix of the noun is replaced by the prefix **KI-**. In the plural, we simply replace **KI-** by **VI-**.

	ORIGINE	SINGULAR	PLURAL	TRANSLATION
<b>Mtoto</b>	(child)	<b>Kitoto</b>	<b>vitoto</b>	a little child, little children
<b>Sahani</b>	(plate)	<b>Kisahani</b>	<b>visahani</b>	a saucer, saucers

## 3. CLASS AGREEMENTS :

1. Adjective : The adjective takes prefixes of class agreement that are identical to those of the noun : (See : [Chapter 11](#).)

<u>Class 7 :</u>	<b>Kitu</b>	<b>kikubwa / kidogo / kizuri / kibaya / chema / ...</b>	
	a	big / small / beautiful / bad / nice / ...	thing
<u>Class 8 :</u>	<b>Vitu</b>	<b>vikubwa / vidogo / vizuri / vibaya / vyema / ...</b>	
		big / small / beautiful / bad / nice / ...	things

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 7 :</u>	<b>Kitu</b>	<b>changu / chako / chake / chetu / chenu / chao</b>	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	thing
<u>Class 8 :</u>	<b>Vitu</b>	<b>vyangu / vyako / vyake / vyetu / vyenu / vyao</b>	
	=	my / your / his - her / our / your / their	things

NOTE : The adjective that qualifies a class 7 / 8 noun of person, must take class 1 / 2 agreements.

<b>Kijana mzuri</b> (instead of <b>kijana kizuri</b> )	A nice young man
<b>Vijana wazuri</b> (instead of <b>vijana vizuri</b> )	Nice young men
<b>Yule kibarua mvivu</b>	That lazy day laborer
<b>Wale vibarua wavivu</b>	Those lazy day laborers

## EXERCISES

### **EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. A spoon, a cup, a saucer, a knife, a village, a well, a hut, an hippopotamus, a rhinoceros, a head, a certificate, French, Swahili, English, Arabic, a basket, a pill, a pipe, a hill, food.
- b. Onions, matches, shoes, fabrics, containers, books, things, young people, day laborers, handicapped people, butterflies, potatoes, rooms, beds, baskets, mirrors, islands, huts, deaf persons, fingers.
- c. This utensil, these spoons, this chair, this mirror, these beautiful things, this large book, this sharp knife, this beautiful cup, these many hippopotamuses, this new pipe, this good food, these big potatoes, these intelligent young people, those lazy day laborers, this wild rhinoceros.

### **EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English and give the plural, whenever possible :

**Kijiko, kikombe, kiswahili, kiboko, kikapu, kiatu, kiarabu, kioo, choo, cheti, chuma, kifaransa, kipande, kitabu, kitanda, kifua, kiingereza, kisiwa, kisima, cheo.**

### **EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into English :

1. Watoto hawa wanakula chakula kizuri hiki.
  2. Soma kitabu kile kizuri !
  3. Kiswahili chako ni kizuri sana.
  4. Mama amenunua kikapu kipya sokoni.
  5. Usitupe viazi vidogo vile !
  6. Kisu hiki ni kikali sana.
  7. Usikate kidole chako na kisu hiki !
  8. Tunapenda hicho kijiji chetu.
  9. Angalia kifarua yule mkubwa !
  10. Kitoto hajala chakula chake bado.
-



## Chapter 17 - The Verb KUWA = to Be

The verb **KUWA** (= TO BE) is by far the most disconcerting verb in Swahili : it is a polymorphic verb that possesses no less than 3 different principal radicals : **-WA-**, **-Ø-** and **-LI-**.

First of all, it is advisable to distinguish clearly the two distinct uses of the verb "to be" in Swahili, which are often confused in English :

1. "To be" descriptive : this verb allots a statute or a quality to somebody or something : I am English, he is rich, dad is a teacher, I'm not sick, etc.
2. "To be" locative : this verb signifies the presence or the absence of somebody or something in a place : I am in Tanzania, he is at home, she is not there, Mafia is in the south, etc.

### 1. "TO BE" DESCRIPTIVE :

#### A. PRESENT :

There are two conjugations of the verb "to be" in the present tense : an old one, which is no longer used in the negative form, but still survives in the affirmative form in some set phrases, and a modern one which has the merit of simplicity, since it possesses only two forms : **NI** in the affirmative, and **SI** in the negative, for all persons and all nominal agreements.

#### AFFIRMATIVE FORM

OLD	MODERN	Translation
NI	NI	I am
U	NI	you are
YU	NI	he / she / it is
TU	NI	we are
M	NI	you are
WA	NI	they are

NEGATIVE FORM

OLD	MODERN	Translation
SIWI	SI	I am not
HUWI	SI	you are not
HAWI	SI	he / she / it is not
HATUWI	SI	we are not
HAMWI	SI	you are not
HAWAWI	SI	they are not



## Chapter 18 - The Verb KUWA NA = to Have

For want of a genuine verb "to have" in Swahili, we use the expression **KUWA NA**, which literally means "to be with".

In the absence of a verb radical, the particle **"NA"** is directly coupled to the subject prefix : this is the case in the Present Definite. It will remain separated from the verb in the other tenses and forms, including the infinitive.

### 1. CONJUGATION OF THE VERB "KUWA NA" :

#### A. PRESENT :

In the affirmative form, the affirmative subject prefixes are directly followed by the particle **"NA"**, in the absence of any verb radical. (We speak of a Ø radical).

The same applies to the negative form, where the negative subject prefixes are directly followed by the particle **"NA"**.

CLASS	AFFIRMATIVE	Translation	NEGATIVE	Translation
1 2 CI 1 Mtu 3	NINA UNA ANA	I have you have he / she has	SINA HUNA HANA	I haven't you haven't he / she hasn't
1 2 CI 2 Watu 3	TUNA MNA WANA	we have you have they have	HATUNA HAMNA HAWANA	we haven't you haven't they haven't
CI 3 Mti CI 4 Miti	UNA INA	it has they have	HAUNA HAINA	it hasn't they haven't
CI 5 Gari CI 6 Magari	LINA YANA	it has they have	HALINA HAYANA	it hasn't they haven't
CI 7 Kiti CI 8 Viti	KINA VINA	it has they have	HAKINA HAVINA	it hasn't they haven't
CI 9 Nguo CI 10 Nguo	INA ZINA	it has they have	HAINA HAZINA	it hasn't they haven't
CI 11 Uso CI 10 Nyuso	UNA ZINA	it has they have	HAUNA HAZINA	it hasn't they haven't

**EXAMPLES :****Nina vitabu vingi**

I have many books

**Mtoto huyu ana uso mzuri**

This child has a pretty face

**Watumishi wana mishahara midogo**

The servants have small wages

**Mti ule una matawi mengi**

That tree has many branches

**Kilima hiki kina miti mirefu**

This hill has tall trees

**Sina nguo nyingi**

I haven't many clothes

**Hatuna chakula kingine**

We haven't much food

**Hamisi hana viatu**

Hamisi has no shoes

**B. PAST :**

<b>AFFIRMATIVE</b>	<b>Translation</b>	<b>NEGATIVE</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>NILIKUWA NA</b>	I had	<b>SIKUWA NA</b>	I didn't have
<b>ULIKUWA NA</b>	you had	<b>HUKUWA NA</b>	you didn't have
<b>ALIKUWA NA</b>	he / she had	<b>HAKUWA NA</b>	he / she didn't have
<b>TULIKUWA NA</b>	we had	<b>HATUKUWA NA</b>	we didn't have
<b>MLIKUWA NA</b>	you had	<b>HAMKUWA NA</b>	you didn't have
<b>WALIKUWA NA</b>	they had	<b>HAWAKUWA NA</b>	they didn't have

**C. FUTURE :**

<b>AFFIRMATIVE</b>	<b>Translation</b>	<b>NEGATIVE</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>NITAKUWA NA</b>	I will have	<b>SITAKUWA NA</b>	I won't have
<b>UTAKUWA NA</b>	you will have	<b>HUTAKUWA NA</b>	you won't have
<b>ATAKUWA NA</b>	he / she will have	<b>HATAKUWA NA</b>	he / she won't have
<b>TUTAKUWA NA</b>	we will have	<b>HATUTAKUWA NA</b>	we won't have
<b>MTAKUWA NA</b>	you will have	<b>HAMTAKUWA NA</b>	you won't have
<b>WATAKUWA NA</b>	they will have	<b>HAWATAKUWA NA</b>	they won't have

**E. OTHER TENSES :**

PAST PERFECT :**Nimekuwa na**

= I have had

**Ame kuwa na**

= he / she has had

PAST PERFECT NEGATIVE :**Sijawa na**

= I haven't had yet

**Hajawa na**

= he / she hasn't had yet

SUBJUNCTIVE :**Niwe na**

= that I have

**awe na**

= that he / she have

-KI- TENSE :**Nikiwa na**

= if I have

**Akiwa na**

= if he / she has

PRESENT CONDITIONAL :**Ningekuwa na**

= I would have

**Angekuwa na**

= he / she would have

PAST CONDITIONAL :**Ningalikuwa na**

= I would have had

**Angalikuwa na**

= he / she would have had

**2. TO TRANSLATE "THERE IS", "THERE ISN'T" :**

Unlike in English, we use in Swahili the verb "to have" (**KUWA NA**) to translate the concept of "THERE IS". The ordinary nominal subject prefixes are simply replaced by a series of three locative subject prefixes. The distinction between singular and plural (there is / there are) is not marked in Swahili :

<b>PA-</b>	(class 16)	for a definite place
<b>KU-</b>	(class 17)	for an indefinite place
<b>M-</b>	(class 18)	for an interior place

<b>AFFIRMATIVE</b>	<b>Translation</b>	<b>NEGATIVE</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>PANA</b>	There is here / there	<b>HAPANA</b>	There isn't here / there
<b>KUNA</b>	There is over here / there	<b>HAKUNA</b>	There isn't over there
<b>MNA</b>	There is inside	<b>HAMNA</b>	There isn't inside

EXAMPLES :**Kuna vitabu vingi**

There are many books (here)

**Kuna maziwa ? - Hakuna bado**

There is milk ? - There isn't yet

**Unasema kiswahili ? - Hapana**

Do you speak Swahili ? - No

**Pana wanyama wakali porini**

There are savage animals in the bush

**Kuna Coca-Cola ? - Hamna**

There is Coca-Cola ? - There isn't

**Hakuna matata ! / Hakuna matatizo !**

There is no problem !

**Hamna shida ! / Hamna tabu !**

There is no problem !



## VOCABULARY

<b>Mbuni (mi-)</b>	a coffee tree	<b>Mpango (mi-)</b>	a plan, a project
<b>Mkataba (mi-)</b>	a contract	<b>Mpunga (mi-)</b>	rice (paddy)
<b>Mkia (mi-)</b>	a tail	<b>Msikiti (mi-)</b>	a mosque
<b>Mkutano (mi-)</b>	a meeting	<b>Mstari (mi-)</b>	a line
<b>Mnara (mi-)</b>	a minaret	<b>Msumari (mi-)</b>	a nail
<b>Mpaka (mi-)</b>	a border, a limit	<b>Mtihani (mi-)</b>	an examination, an exam

### Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. You have, she has, they have, we have, I have, you have (plur), he has, you haven't, he hasn't, they haven't, we haven't, I haven't, you haven't (plur), there is (here), there isn't (here), there is (inside), there isn't (inside), there is (over there), there isn't (over there).
- b. Have you a book ? The child has a big head, this young man has a knife, there is a book, we have many animals, the woman has many children, these children have a good teacher, do you have pawpaws ? Juma has clean shoes, I have a new cup, this village has many villagers, this animal has many insects, you have dirty hands, this mountain has many trees, this bed has a clan shit, we don't have children, do you have eggs ? The driver has no car, the car has no driver, the farmer has a large field.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mzungu ana mizigo mizito.
2. Sina (jambo) la kusema.
3. Mkate upo ? - Hamna.
4. Miembe ile ina maembe mengi.
5. Mtoto maskini huyu hana chahula kila siku.
6. Mna wenyeji wengi Nairobi.
7. Gari lile lina matatizo mengi.
8. Wanachama wana mkutano leo.
9. Kitanda hiki hakina shuka.
10. Tuna mtihani wa kiswahili leo.



## Chapter 19 - Adverbs

**REMINDER :** An adverb is an invariable word that says how an action proceeds (quickly, slowly, etc... ), with which frequency (often, sometimes, never, etc... ). It expresses possibility or certainty (maybe, certainly, etc... ), or qualifies an adjective (very large, quite small, etc... )

In Swahili, the adverb is placed after the verb, except in some particular cases.

### 1. COMMON ADVERBS :

<b>Badala</b>	instead of	<b>Mno</b>	too much
<b>Bure</b>	in vain	<b>Pamoja</b>	together
<b>Ghafla</b>	suddenly	<b>Ovyo</b>	anyhow
<b>Hakika</b>	sure	<b>Pengine</b>	maybe
<b>Halisi</b>	exactly	<b>Pia</b>	also, too
<b>Haraka</b>	quickly	<b>Sana</b>	very
<b>Hasa</b>	especially	<b>Taratibu</b>	regularly
<b>Kabisa</b>	completely	<b>Tena</b>	again
<b>Kadhalika</b>	in the same way	<b>Tu</b>	only
<b>Kamwe</b>	never, at all	<b>Upesi</b>	quickly
<b>Kweli</b>	true	<b>Upya</b>	again
<b>Labda</b>	perhaps	<b>Zaidi</b>	more

### ADVERBS FORMED ON THE PREFIXES KI- and VI-

#### COMPARISON

<b>Kiaskari</b>	like a soldier
<b>Kidogo</b>	a little
<b>Kinyama</b>	like an animal
<b>Kipumbavu</b>	like an idiot
<b>Kishamba</b>	like a peasant
<b>Kishenzi</b>	like a savage
<b>Kitoto</b>	like a child
<b>Kizungu</b>	like a white

#### MANNER

<b>Hivi</b>	in this way
<b>Hivyo</b>	in that way
<b>Vibaya</b>	badly
<b>Vigumu</b>	difficult
<b>Vingine</b>	in another way
<b>Vinginevyo</b>	in any other way
<b>Vivyo</b>	in the same way
<b>Vizuri</b>	well

### 2. COMPOUND ADVERBS :

<b>Hata kidogo</b>	not at all
<b>Mbali mbali</b>	differently
<b>Moja moja</b>	one by one
<b>Peke yake</b>	alone
<b>Pole pole</b>	slowly
<b>Ovyo ovyo</b>	badly
<b>Sawa sawa</b>	similarly
<b>Vile vile</b>	equally
<b>Vivi hivi</b>	so so
<b>Vivyo hivyo</b>	exactly the same

### ADVERBS MADE UP WITH KWA

<b>Kwa bahati</b>	fortunately	<b>Kwa kusudi</b>	voluntarily
<b>Kwa ghafla</b>	suddenly	<b>Kwa kutwa</b>	daily
<b>Kwa haraka</b>	hastily, in haste	<b>Kwa kweli</b>	really
<b>Kwa hiyo</b>	thus, so	<b>Kwa sababu hii</b>	then, therefore
<b>Kwa kawaida</b>	usually	<b>Kwa sauti</b>	loudly
<b>Kwa kifupi</b>	in short	<b>Kwa siri</b>	secretly

### 3. A FEW EXAMPLES :

<b>Fanya haraka !</b>	Hurry up !
<b>Wamechoka kabisa.</b>	They are really tired.
<b>Usijibu ovyo !</b>	Don't answer badly !
<b>Jibu vizuri !</b>	Answer correctly !
<b>Ngoja kidogo !</b>	Wait a little !
<b>Nenda pole pole !</b>	Go slowly !
<b>Njoo haraka !</b>	Come quickly !
<b>Nimechelewa kidogo.</b>	I am a little late.
<b>Mtoto anatumia kisu vibaya.</b>	The child uses his knife wrongly.
<b>Sema kwa sauti !</b>	Speak aloud !
<b>Ninataka mkate mmoja tu.</b>	I want one bread only.
<b>Kusema kiswahili si vigumu.</b>	Speaking Swahili is not difficult.
<b>Yeye si mpishi, hata kidogo.</b>	He is not a cook, not at all.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Chandarua (vy-)</b>	a mosquito net	<b>Kifuniko (vi-)</b>	a cover, a lid
<b>Chura (vy-)</b>	a frog	<b>Kikoi (vi-)</b>	a loin cloth
<b>Kibaba (vi-)</b>	a measure	<b>Kipimo (vi-)</b>	a measure
<b>Kinu (vi-)</b>	a mortar	<b>Kitana (vi-)</b>	a comb
<b>Kibuyu (vi-)</b>	a calabash, a gourd	<b>Kiwanda (vi-)</b>	a workshop
<b>Kifo (vi-)</b>	death	<b>Kizibo (vi-)</b>	a cork

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Suddenly, together, maybe, only, more, too much, above all, truly, quickly, in vain, again, very, not at all, alone, one by one, fortunately, voluntarily, in short, then, this way.
- b. He speaks like an idiot, he leaves suddenly, we work daily, they hit like savages, this luggage is very heavy, this one is too heavy, the rhinoceros is coming again, hurry up ! The master is maybe coming back today, the little child is eating slowly, this pupil studies regularly, I have one child only, I am completely tired, the guests are a little late, here are the news in brief.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

**Pole pole, vile vile, mbali mbali, sawa sawa, hivyo, vivyo, pengine, labda, hakika, kamwe, kwa kweli, bure, ovyo, pamoja, peke yake, hasa, kizungu, kinyama, kidogo, kwa kawaida.**

### EXERCISE 3 : Translate into English :

1. Je, chakula tayari ? - Bado kidogo, bwana.
2. Usiseme upesi, sema pole pole tu.

3. Hasemi kitu, hata kidogo.
4. Kwa bahati mzuri, nimeona kifaru mmoja porini.
5. Kwa kawaida, mpishi wetu anachelewa kazini.
6. Fagia chumba hiki, na kile vile vile.
7. Usinfunge mlango ghafula, tafadhali.
8. Mtoto ametupa jiwe lile kwa kusudi.
9. Watoto wanasimama kiaskari.
10. Gari lile ni ghali mno.
11. Kwa kweli, chandarua hiki kinafaa kabisa.
12. Nimepotea kitana changu tena.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 20 - The N- Gender

The **N-** gender (Classes 9 / 10) is one of the broadest genders : it comprises nouns of people, animals, plants, food, objects used in everyday life, natural elements, abstract nouns, etc..

Many nouns borrowed from English are absorbed in the **N-** gender.

This gender is very particular in that it contains a large number of nouns which do not start with the prefix **N-** (we speak of a **Ø-** prefix). Yet it's the only gender that comprises nouns starting with **N-**.

For phonetic reasons the prefix **N-** changes into **M-** in front of **B**, **P** and **V**.

However the main characteristic of this class is that the noun is identical in the singular and the plural.



Cl 9 Singular :

prefix **N-**

prefix **Ø-**

**NGUO** = a / the cloth

**KAZI** = a / the work

Cl 10 Plural :

prefix **N-**

prefix **Ø-**

**NGUO** = clothes / the clothes

**KAZI** = works / the works

In the absence of any distinctive prefixes of class, it is indeed the class agreements inside the sentence (verbal, demonstrative or possessive prefixes, etc..) that make it possible to distinguish between singular and plural. Thus :

Singular		Plural	
<b>NGUO <u>ILE</u></b>	= that cloth	<b>NGUO <u>ZILE</u></b>	= those clothes
<b>NGUO <u>YANGU</u></b>	= my cloth	<b>NGUO <u>ZANGU</u></b>	= my clothes

### 1. NOUNS OF THE N- GENDER GROUPED BY TOPICS :

#### 1. PEOPLE :

<b>Askari</b>	a soldier
<b>Baba</b>	father, dad
<b>Babu</b>	grandfather
<b>Dada</b>	sister
<b>Kaka</b>	brother

<b>Mama</b>	mother, mum
<b>Ndugu</b>	brother, comrade
<b>Nyanya</b>	grandmother
<b>Rafiki</b>	friend
<b>Shemeji</b>	brother-in-law, sister-in-law

## 2. MANUFACTURED OBJECTS :

<b>Barua</b>	a letter
<b>Chupa</b>	a bottle
<b>Dawa</b>	a drug, a medicine
<b>Kalamu</b>	a pen
<b>Karatasi</b>	a paper

<b>Ngoma</b>	a drum
<b>Sabuni</b>	soap
<b>Sahani</b>	a plate
<b>Sufuria</b>	a pan
<b>Suruali</b>	trousers

## 3. NATURE :

<b>Ardhi</b>	ground, earth
<b>Bahari</b>	sea
<b>Baridi</b>	cold
<b>Barafu</b>	ice

<b>Hewa</b>	air, atmosphere
<b>Nuru</b>	light
<b>Mvua</b>	rain
<b>Njia</b>	a way

## 4. ABSTRACT CONCEPTS :

<b>Ajali</b>	an accident
<b>Bahati</b>	luck
<b>Furaha</b>	joy
<b>Hasara</b>	a loss
<b>Hatari</b>	a danger

<b>Huzuni</b>	sadness
<b>Nguvu</b>	strength
<b>Ruhusa</b>	permission
<b>Shida</b>	difficulties
<b>Thamani</b>	value

## 5. ANIMALS :

<b>Kuku</b>	a chicken
<b>Mbu</b>	a mosquito
<b>Mbuzi</b>	a goat
<b>Mbwa</b>	a dog
<b>Ndege</b>	a bird

<b>Ng'ombe</b>	a cow
<b>Nyoka</b>	a snake
<b>Paka</b>	a cat
<b>Samaki</b>	a fish
<b>Simba</b>	a lion

**6. FOOD, FRUITS, VEGETABLES :**

<b>Chai</b>	tea	<b>Ndizi</b>	a banana
<b>Chumvi</b>	salt	<b>Nyama</b>	meat
<b>Kahawa</b>	coffee	<b>Pilipili</b>	pepper
<b>Mboga</b>	a vegetable	<b>Siagi</b>	butter, margarine
<b>Nazi</b>	a coconut	<b>Sukari</b>	sugar

**2. CLASS AGREEMENTS :**

1. Adjective : The adjective takes the prefix **N-** and follows the same rules as the noun :

- It takes **N-** in front of a radical that starts with **D, G** or **Z**.
- It takes **M-** in front of a radical that starts with **B, P** or **V**.
- It takes **NY-** in front of a radical that starts with a vowel.
- It doesn't take any prefix in all other cases.

(See : [Chapter 11 - Concordant Adjectives](#).)

<u>Class 9 :</u>	<b>Nguo</b>	<b>kubwa / ndogo / nzuri / mbaya / nyeusi / ...</b>	
	a	large / small / beautiful / bad / dark / ...	cloth
<u>Class 10 :</u>	<b>Nguo</b>	<b>kubwa / ndogo / nzuri / mbaya / nyeusi / ...</b>	
		large / small / beautiful / bad / dark / ...	clothes

2. Possessive adjectives :

<u>Class 9 :</u>	<b>Nguo</b>	<b>yangu / yako / yake / yetu / yenu / yao</b>	
	=	my / your / his-her-its / our / your (plur) / their	cloth
<u>Class 10 :</u>	<b>Nguo</b>	<b>zangu / zako / zake / zetu / zenu / zao</b>	
	=	my / your / his-her-its / our / your (plur) / their	clothes

NOTE : When the noun it refers to is a person, the possessive adjective takes agreements of the **N-** gender, instead of the usual **M-/WA-** gender agreements, which makes it possible to distinguish between the singular and the plural.

EXAMPLES :



**Ninacheza mpira na rafiki yangu**  
**Ninacheza mpira na rafiki zangu**  
**Amekwenda sokoni na dada yake**  
**Nyanya yangu mkali**

I play football with my friend  
I play football with my friends  
She has gone to the market with her sister  
My grandmother is severe

## EXERCISES

### **EXERCISE 1** : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Salt, pepper, a banana, a coconut, a dog, a cat, a fish, a goat, a danger, a loss, sadness, the value, ice, cold, rain, a way, a bottle, a drug, soap, a plate.
- b. My grandmother, my grandfather, my friend, my friends, this sister-in-law, these sisters-in-law, my trousers, my clothes, my pen, this large lion, this little cat, this fierce dog, my tea, your coffee, a great sadness, a great danger, bad luck, delicious bananas, rotten coconuts, a long way.

### **EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

- a. Kahawa, chai, siagi, sukari, thamani, mbuzi, mbwa, mbu, nguvu, mvua, nuru, hewa, ardhi, bahari, mboga, nyama, karatasi, ngoma, sahani, ndugu, rafiki, askari, hasara, ruhusa, ndege.
- b. Rafiki zako, mama yangu, dada yake, kaka yetu, nyanya yako, nguo zangu, suruali yake, chupa zetu, barua yangu, kalamu yako, sahani zake, ruhusa yako, mbwa yangu, kuku zao, furaha yake, shida zetu, ndizi zao, nazi zangu, paka yako, hasara yenu.

### **EXERCISE 3** : Translate into English :

- 1. Mpishi amepika chai na kahawa.
- 2. Wanafunzi wana karatasi na kalamu.
- 3. Unataka nyama au samaki ?
- 4. Mnazi huu una nazi nyingi.
- 5. Gari lako ni hatari kubwa njiani.
- 6. Mtoto anakula mkate na chai asubuhi.
- 7. Kuna nyama leo ? - Hakuna.
- 8. Nimepotea paka yangu mdogo.

9. Pole sana kwa hasara yako.
10. Mimi mgonjwa sana. Sina nguvu hata kidogo.
11. Leo tunakula kuku na supu na mboga mbali mbali.
12. Chai hiyo baridi mno. Tia moto tena !

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 21 - Interrogative Words

When asking a question in Swahili, we don't use any auxiliary verb, or invert the position of the subject and the auxiliary, as is often practiced in English. Since the subject prefix remains attached to the verb root, it is indeed the intonation, and possibly the presence of an interrogative word in the sentence that signal it is a question.

The interrogative word is usually located before or after the verb.

### PRINCIPAL INTERROGATIVE WORDS :

#### 1. **NANI ?** = Who ?

- Mtoto huyu (ni) <u>nani</u> ?	Who is this child ?
- <u>Nani</u> huyo ?	Who is he / she ?
- Jina lako <u>nani</u> ?	What's your name ? ( <i>Who your name ?</i> )
- <u>Nani</u> anataka kitabu hiki ?	Who wants this book ?
- Umeona <u>nani</u> ?	Who have you seen ?
- <u>Nani</u> aliyekupiga ?	Who hit you ?

#### 2. **NINI ?** = What ?

- Unataka <u>nini</u> ?	What do you want ?
- <u>Nini</u> hii ?	What is it ?
- Unasema <u>nini</u> ?	What do you say ?
- Nichukue <u>nini</u> na <u>nini</u> ?	What should I take ?

#### 3. **GANI ?** = What ? / What sort ? / What kind ? / Which ?

- Unataka kitu <u>gani</u> ?	What do you want ?
- Kuna soda <u>gani</u> ?	What kind of soda is there ?

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| - Unafanya kazi <u>gani</u> ?       | What sort of work do you do ?   |
| - Vitunguu <u>kiasi gani</u> ?      | How much are the onions ?       |
| - Mananasi <u>bei gani</u> ?        | What price are the pineapples ? |
| - Umepata ajali <u>namna gani</u> ? | How have you got an accident ?  |

4.

**WAPI ?** = Where ?

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| - Wageni wamekwenda <u>wapi</u> ? | Where have the guests gone ? |
| - Bwana yuko <u>wapi</u> ?        | Where is the master ?        |

5. **-NGAPI ?** = How much ? / How many ?**-ngapi ?** works like an adjective. It is placed after the name and agrees in class with it.

- |                                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| CI 2 - Watu <u>wangapi</u> ?      | How many people ?  |
| CI 4 - Miaka <u>mingapi</u> ?     | How many years ?   |
| CI 6 - Machungwa <u>mangapi</u> ? | How many oranges ? |
| CI 8 - Vijiko <u>vingapi</u> ?    | How many spoons ?  |
| CI 10 - Nyumba <u>ngapi</u> ?     | How many houses ?  |

EXAMPLES :

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| - Wako watu <u>wangapi</u> Zanzibar ? | How many people in Zanzibar ?     |
| - Kikapu hiki <u>shilingi ngapi</u> ? | How much is this basket ?         |
| - Basi linaondoka <u>saa ngapi</u> ?  | What time does the bus leave ?    |
| - Umekwenda Lamu <u>mara ngapi</u> ?  | How often have you been to Lamu ? |

6. **LINI ?** = When ?

- |                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| - Utarudi <u>lini</u> ?               | When will you come back ?      |
| - Tangu <u>lini</u> umekuwa mgonjwa ? | Since when have you been ill ? |
| - Mvua itakwisha <u>lini</u> ?        | When will the rain stop ?      |
| - <u>Lini</u> watakwenda Mombasa ?    | When will they go to Mombasa ? |

7. **JE ?** or **-JE ?** affixed to the verb = What ? / How ?

- <u>Je</u> , unakwenda Nairobi leo ?	I say, are you going to Nairobi today ?
- <u>Je</u> kazi imekwisha ?	Eh ! Is work finished ?
- Viatu hivi unauzaje ?	How much do you sell these shoes ?
- Unasemaje ?	What do you say ?
- Tufanyeje ?	What should we do ?
- Nakwenda sokoni. Wewe je ?	I'm going to the market. What about you ?

8. **-PI ?** = Which one / Which ones ?

**-pi ?** works like a pronoun. It can be used by itself or after a noun with which it agrees, taking pronominal prefixes of agreement.

CI 1 - Mtu <u>yupi</u> ?	Which person ?
CI 2 - Watu <u>wapi</u> ?	Which people ?
CI 3 - Mti <u>upi</u> ?	Which tree ?
CI 4 - Miti <u>ipi</u> ?	Which trees ?
CI 5 - Tunda <u>lipi</u> ?	Which fruit ?
CI 6 - Matunda <u>yapi</u> ?	Which fruits ?
CI 7 - Kitu <u>kipi</u> ?	Which thing ?
CI 8 - Vitu <u>vipi</u> ?	Which things ?
CI 9 - Nguo <u>ipi</u> ?	Which cloth ?
CI 10 - Nguo <u>zipi</u> ?	Which clothes ?
CI 11 - Usiku <u>upi</u> ?	Which night ?

EXAMPLES :

- Tushike njia <u>ipi</u> ?	Which way should we take ?
- Umeleta <u>ipi</u> ?	Which one have you brought ?
- Unataka <u>zipi</u> ?	Which ones do you want ?
- Utafanya <u>vipi</u> ?	How will you do ?

9. **KWA NINI ?** = Why ?

- <u>Kwa nini</u> unachelewa kila siku ?	Why are you late every day ?
- <u>Kwa nini</u> unataka kazi ?	Why do you want a job ?
- <u>Kwa nini</u> hakuna sukari ?	Why is there no sugar ?

10. **KWA SABABU GANI ?** = For what reason ?

- **Kwa sababu gani** unachelewa kila siku ?

For what reason are you late every day ?

## VOCABULARY

<b>Akili</b>	intelligence
<b>Faida</b>	profit
<b>Fedha</b>	money
<b>Fikira</b>	a thought
<b>Habari</b>	a news
<b>Hasira</b>	anger

<b>Mali</b>	fortune
<b>Markiti</b>	the market (in Z'bar)
<b>Meza</b>	a table
<b>Nchi</b>	a country
<b>Nyumba</b>	a house
<b>Shule / Skuli</b>	a school

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. Who is that man ?
2. Whose are these clothes ?
3. Who threw this stone ?
4. What do you sell ?
5. How much do you sell these oranges ?
6. What kind of animal is it ?
7. What kind of fruit is it ?
8. What wages do you want ?
9. How many day laborers do you need ?
10. How many luggages are there at home ?
11. What's your name ?
12. What sort of meat is there at the market ?
13. How many fruit have you bought ?
14. Where do these vegetables come from ?
15. How many eggs should I buy ?

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Mwalimu yuko wapi ? - Yuko nyumbani.
2. Watoto wako wapi ? - Wako shuleni.
3. Kuna wanyama gani Serengeti ?
4. Unafanya nini shambani ?
5. Nitawezaje kubeba mzigo huu ?
6. Wamefika Nairobi lini ?
7. Kisu changu kipya kiko wapi ?
8. Kwa nini umepika kuku na mboga tena ?
9. Je, umesoma kitabu hiki ?
10. Jina lako nani ? - Jina langu Idi Kibogoyo.
11. Mkutano unaanza saa ngapi ?
12. Watoto wangapi wamekosa kuja shuleni leo ?
13. Kwa nini unachelewa kazini kila siku ?
14. Unasemaje ? - Sina la kusema.
15. Chai iko wapi ? - Iko mezani.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 22 - Numbers

### 1. NUMBERS FROM 1 TO 20 :

1	-MOJA	11	KUMI NA -MOJA
2	-WILI / MBILI	12	KUMI NA -WILI / MBILI
3	-TATU	13	KUMI NA -TATU
4	-NNE	14	KUMI NA -NNE
5	-TANO	15	KUMI NA -TANO
6	SITA	16	KUMI NA SITA
7	SABA	17	KUMI NA SABA
8	-NANE	18	KUMI NA -NANE
9	TISA	19	KUMI NA TISA
10	KUMI	20	ISHIRINI

Numbers in Swahili behave like adjectives, and like all adjectives, they are placed after the noun, but before the demonstrative. One characteristic of the numbers is that some of them are invariable while others are concordant. Thus :

Numbers 6, 7, 9, 10, 20 are invariable and do not take class prefixes.

Numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8 agree with the noun and take a class prefix.

#### NOTE :

By their nature, number 1 (**-moja**) takes only class agreements in the singular, whereas numbers 2 (**-wili**), 3 (**-tatu**), 4 (**-nne**), 5 (**-tano**) and 8 (**-nane**) take only plural agreements. In the case of a composite number (11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, etc.) only the concordant part of the number takes a prefix of class.

### AGREEMENTS OF THE NUMBERS : 2, 3, 4, 5, 8 :

CLASS / NOUN	2	3	4	5	8
Cl 2 Watoto	wawili	watatu	wanne	watano	wanane
Cl 4 Mikate	miwili	mitatu	minne	mitano	minane
Cl 6 Matunda	mawili	matatu	manne	matano	manane
Cl 8 Viti	viwili	vitatu	vinne	vitano	vinane
Cl 10 Nguo	mbili	tatu	nne	tano	nane



EXAMPLES :

1	<b>Mtoto mmoja</b>	One child
1	<b>Mkate mmoja</b>	One bread
1	<b>Tunda moja</b>	One fruit
1	<b>Nguo moja</b>	One cloth
1	<b>Kijiko kimoja</b>	One spoon
3	<b>Miaka mitatu</b>	Three years
6	<b>Matunda sita</b>	Six fruits
8	<b>Matunda manane</b>	Eight fruits
8	<b>Watu wanane</b>	Eight people
11	<b>Vijiko kumi na kimoja</b>	Eleven spoons
12	<b>Vijiko kumi na viwili</b>	Twelve spoons
13	<b>Matunda kumi na matatu</b>	Thirteen fruits
14	<b>Miti kumi na minne</b>	Fourteen trees
18	<b>Watu kumi na wanane</b>	Eighteen people
25	<b>Watu ishirini na watano</b>	Twenty-five people

**2. TENS :**

10	KUMI		
20	ISHIRINI	60	SITINI
30	THELATHINI	70	SABINI
40	AROBAINI	80	THEMANINI
50	HAMSINI	90	TISINI

When a ten is followed by a unit, the unit is introduced by the word **NA** = and.

EXAMPLES :

21	<b>Watoto ishirini na mmoja</b>	Twenty-one children
34	<b>Watu thelathini na wanne</b>	Thirty-four people
61	<b>Viti sitini na kimoja</b>	Sixty-one chairs
78	<b>Viti sabini na vinane</b>	Seventy-eight chairs

**3. HUNDREDS :**

100	MIA (MOJA)		
200	MIA MBILI	600	MIA SITA
300	MIA TATU	700	MIA SABA
400	MIA NNE	800	MIA NANE
500	MIA TANO	900	MIA TISA

When a hundred is followed by tens and units, we use the word **NA** (= and), but only once, between the last two numbers.

EXAMPLES :

101	Mia na moja
110	Mia na kumi
111	Mia kumi na moja
308	Mia tatu na nane
328	Mia tatu ishirini na nane

**4. THOUSANDS :**

1000	ELFU (MOJA)		
2000	ELFU MBILI	6000	ELFU SITA
3000	ELFU TATU	7000	ELFU SABA
4000	ELFU NNE	8000	ELFU NANE
5000	ELFU TANO	9000	ELFU TISA

In numbers containing thousands, the word **NA** introduces the tens or the units, but it is never used between the thousands and the hundreds.

EXAMPLES :

1001	Elfu moja na moja
1600	Elfu moja mia sita
1735	Elfu moja mia saba thelathini na tano
4352	Elfu nne mia tatu hamsini na mbili
4500	Elfu nne mia tano
7800	Elfu saba mia nane
8903	Elfu nane mia tisa na tatu

## 5. TENS OF THOUSANDS :

When handling numbers with tens of thousands, some care must be taken to avoid confusions. For example :

Number **15.000** should read : **Elfu kumi na tano**, which can also be interpreted as : **1015** !

Thus, to avoid any risk of confusion, the word **elfu** will be placed AFTER the number that quantifies it, and the number will read : **15.000 = Kumi na tano elfu**.

This rule must be observed every time the tens of thousands are not followed by any other number.

### EXAMPLES :

<b>16.000</b>	<b>Kumi na sita elfu</b>
<b>30.000</b>	<b>Thelathini elfu</b>
<b>48.000</b>	<b>Arobaini na nane elfu</b>

On the other hand, when the tens of thousands are followed by hundreds, tens, or units, there is no such risk of confusion, and the words retain their normal order.

### EXAMPLES :

<b>16.030</b>	<b>Elfu kumi na sita na thelatini</b>
<b>30.200</b>	<b>Elfu thelatini mia mbili</b>
<b>48.025</b>	<b>Elfu arobaini na nane ishirini na tano</b>

### NOTE :

There is a Swahili word to designate the hundreds of thousands : **LAKI** = lakh, lac. Thus :  
**Laki mbili** = 200.000, **Laki sita** = 600.000, etc.  
 Million is : **MILIONI**.

## 6. FRACTIONS :

<b>1/2</b>	<b>Nusu</b>	a half
<b>1/4</b>	<b>Robo</b>	a quarter
<b>1/8</b>	<b>Thumni</b>	an eighth

## 7. DECIMALS :

The figure "zero" is : **SIFURI**.

The word "point" is : **NUKTA** or **POINTI**.

Decimal numbers are read in Swahili as in English, i.e. by separating each figure after the point.

EXAMPLES :

- 0.5 Sifuri nukta tano  
 10.25 Kumi nukta mbili, tano  
 20.125 Ishirini nukta moja, mbili, tano

**8. ORDINAL NUMBERS :**

-A KWANZA	Mtoto wa kwanza	The first child
-A PILI	Gari la pili	The second car
-A TATU	Mara ya tatu	The third time
-A NNE	Mkate wa nne	The fourth bread
-A TANO	Nyumba ya tano	The fifth house
-A SITA	Mnyama wa sita	The sixth animal
-A SABA	Siku ya saba	The seventh day
-A NANE	Mti wa nane	The eighth tree
-A TISA	Mwezi wa tisa	The ninth month
-A KUMI	Mtu wa kumi	The tenth person

**Chakubanga**

- Leo ni siku ya tisa sijalewa, inaelekea nataka kuacha ulevi.
- Bila shaka hizo siku tisa huna pesa ! Mimi najua.
- Today is the ninth day since I haven't drunk, I'm certainly going to stop drinking.
- Without a doubt you had no money during those nine days ! I'm sure of this.

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Eka</b>	an acre	<b>Kilometa</b>	a kilometer
<b>Futi</b>	a foot	<b>Lita</b>	a liter
<b>Galoni</b>	a gallon	<b>Maili</b>	a mile
<b>Hatua</b>	a step	<b>Mita</b>	a meter
<b>Inchi</b>	an inch	<b>Ratili</b>	a pound
<b>Kilo</b>	a kilo	<b>Yadi / wari</b>	a yard

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Write these numbers in letters in Swahili :

0 ; 9 ; 22 ; 31 ; 89 ; 93 ; 157 ; 235 ; 695 ; 762 ; 1049 ; 2203 ; 7.000 ; 10.056 ;  
10.914 ; 14.000 ; 14.005 ; 134.000 ; 300.000 ; 752.326 .

**EXERCISE 2 :** Write these numbers in figures :

Kumi na tano ; kumi na tisa ; ishirini na saba ; thelathini na moja ; arobaini na nne ; hamsini na nane ; sabini na tatu ; themanini na tano ; mia mbili ; mia nne ; mia saba ; mia tatu kumi na sita ; elfu tano ; elfu kumi ; elfu kumi na mbili mia tano sabini na nne ; kumi na tano elfu ; arobaini na mbili elfu ; laki moja ; laki saba ; milioni mbili.

**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into Swahili, writing the numbers in letters :

12 cups ; 30 trees ; 11 chairs ; 24 years ; 3 children ; 2 dogs ; 3 cats ; 10 cows ; 115 islands ; 21 people ;  
4 fruits ; 8 oranges ; 4 spoons ; 12 houses ; 3 young people ; 14 lessons ; 18 animals ; 4 bananas ; 225 pupils ; 22 teachers.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 23 - Time

Tanzania and Kenya being located close to the equator, there are few variations during the year in the hours of sunrise and sunset. The sun rises around six o'clock in the morning and sets around six o'clock in the evening.

Therefore 7 o'clock in the morning is the first hour of the day, and seven o'clock in the evening is the first hour of the night : We may consider that there is a six hour shift between Western time and "Swahili" time..

However, while time is read and even written according to the Swahili system, the clocks are always set Western fashion... So one always has to add or subtract mentally 6 hours, to read time correctly !

### 1. THE HOUR :

In Swahili, the word **SAA** (= hour) precedes the figure. Thus :

SWAHILI TIME		WESTERN TIME
<b>SAA MOJA</b>	one o'clock	7 o'clock in the morning
<b>SAA MBILI</b>	two o'clock	8 o'clock in the morning
<b>SAA TATU</b>	three o'clock	9 o'clock in the morning
<b>SAA NNE</b>	four o'clock	10 o'clock in the morning
<b>SAA TANO</b>	five o'clock	11 o'clock in the morning
<b>SAA SITA</b>	six o'clock	12 o'clock in the morning
<b>SAA SABA</b>	seven o'clock	1 o'clock in the afternoon
<b>SAA NANE</b>	eight o'clock	2 o'clock in the afternoon
<b>SAA TISA</b>	nine o'clock	3 o'clock in the afternoon
<b>SAA KUMI</b>	ten o'clock	4 o'clock in the afternoon
<b>SAA KUMI NA MOJA</b>	eleven o'clock	5 o'clock in the evening
<b>SAA KUMI NA MBILI</b>	twelve o'clock	6 o'clock in the evening

EXPRESSION :      **Sasa ni saa saba kamili** = It is now one o'clock sharp    (*now is seven o'clock completely*)

Reading the time over a 24 hour period is not common in Swahili. Therefore, to distinguish between the hours of the night and the hours of the day, we must use different expressions marking the moment of the day :

- "YA ASUBUHI" (= in the morning)
- "YA MCHANA" (= in the afternoon)
- "YA JIONI" (= in the evening)
- "YA USIKU" (= at night)

<u>EXAMPLES :</u>	<b>Saa moja ya asubuhi</b>	= one o'clock in the morning	(= 7 am)
	<b>Sa nane ya mchana</b>	= eight o'clock in the afternoon	(= 2 pm)
	<b>Saa moja ya jioni</b>	= one o'clock in the evening	(= 7 pm)
	<b>Saa tatu ya usiku</b>	= three o'clock at night	(= 9 pm), etc...

## 2. SOME MINUTES PAST :

The word "minute" is : **DAKIKA**. One will mention the additional minutes while counting as follows :

<b>Saa moja...</b>	<b><u>na</u> dakika tano</b>	five past	...seven
	<b><u>na</u> dakika kumi</b>	ten past	
	<b><u>na</u> robo</b>	quarter past	
	<b><u>na</u> dakika shirini</b>	twenty past	

The word "quarter" is : **ROBO**.

The word "half" is : **NUSU**.

<b>Saa tatu <u>na</u> robo</b>	Quarter past three	(= 9 h 15)
<b>Saa tatu <u>u</u> nusu</b>	Half past three	(= 9 h 30)
<b>Saa kumi na mbili <u>u</u> nusu</b>	Half past twelve	(= 6 h 30)

Note that to add minutes and a quarter, we use the word **NA** (= and), while to add a half we use the word **U** (from the Arabic "WA" = and)

## 3. SOME MINUTES TO :

Past the half, we count the missing minutes to reach the following hour. We use the expressions :

**KASORO DAKIKA** ... = ... minutes to ; and **KASOROBO** = quarter to.

EXAMPLES :

<b>Saa nane kasoro dakika kumi</b>	ten to eight	(= ten to two)
------------------------------------	--------------	----------------

**Saa tisa kasoro dakika ishirini**

twenty to nine

(= *twenty to three*)**Saa tisa kasorobo**

quarter to nine

(= *quarter to three*)**4. DIFFERENT PERIODS OF THE DAY AND OF THE NIGHT :**

Every 24 hour period can be divided as follows :

<b>KUCHA</b>	Sunrise	Dawn
<b>ASUBUHI</b>	from 6 am to 12 am approximately	Morning
<b>MCHANA</b>	from 1 pm to 4 / 5 pm approximately	The day
<b>JIONI</b>	from 4 pm to 6 pm approximately	Evening
<b>MACHWA</b>	Sunset	The twilight
<b>USIKU</b>	from 6 pm to 5 am	Night
<b>USIKU KUCHA</b>	from 6 pm to 5 am	The whole night
<b>USIKU WA MANANE</b>	around 2 am	The dead of the night
<b>KUCHA KUTWA</b>	24 hours	The whole day and whole night

**5. PRAYER TIMES :**

In strongly islamized places such as Zanzibar, Lamu (an island north of kenya), etc., the five Muslim prayers give its rythm to the day and constitute for the local population temporal reference points, almost like "hours" :

<b>ALFAJIRI</b>	around 5.45 am / 6.30 am	The dawn prayer
<b>ADHUHURI</b>	around 12 am / 12.30 am	The noon prayer
<b>ALASIRI</b>	around 3 pm / 5 pm	The afternoon prayer
<b>MAGHARIBI</b>	around 6 pm / 6.30 pm	The sunset prayer
<b>ALESHA</b>	around 8 pm and after	The night prayer

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Bata</b>	a duck	<b>Panya</b>	a rat, a mouse
<b>Farasi</b>	a horse	<b>Punda</b>	a donkey
<b>Jogoo</b>	a cock	<b>Mbwa mwitu</b>	a wolf, a wild dog



**Kondoo**            a sheep  
**Nguruwe**        a pig  
**Njiwa**            a pigeon

**Sungura**            a hare, a rabbit  
**Tembo / Ndovu**    an elephant  
**Twiga**              a giraffe

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

7 h 15, 6 h 30 in the evening, 2 h 10, noon, half past three, what time have you got ? Twenty-five to four, 17 h, five past one, nine o'clock, eight o'clock at night, three o'clock in the morning, sunset, evening, dawn.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

Alfajiri, alasiri, magharibi, asubuhi, mchana, usiku, jioni, saa tisa u nusu, saa tatu na dakika kumi, saa sita kasoro dakika tano, saa kumi na mbili ya usiku, saa saba kasorobo, saa tisa, saa tano na dakika kumi na mbili, saa saba kamili.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 24 - Days, Months, Dates

### 1. DAYS OF THE WEEK :

The names of the days of the week in Swahili are a curious mixture of two languages, Arabic and Bantu. Thus, the five first days of the week have got Bantu names, from **Jumamosi** (= Saturday), i.e. first day of the week, until **Jumatano** (= Wednesday), i.e. fifth day of the week. The system would be perfect if one went on with "Jumasita" and "Jumasaba", except that instead of those, Swahili borrowed its two last names from the Arabic : **Alhamisi** (= Thursday), i.e. "five" in Arabic (so that we have now got two "fifth" days in the week ! ) and **Ijumaa** (= Friday) which means the assembly (of faithful, for the Friday prayer at the mosque).

<b>JUMAMOSI</b>	(The 1 <sup>st</sup> day of the week)	Saturday
<b>JUMAPILI</b>	(The 2 <sup>nd</sup> day of the week)	Sunday
<b>JUMATATU</b>	(The 3 <sup>rd</sup> day of the week)	Monday
<b>JUMANNE</b>	(The 4 <sup>th</sup> day of the week)	Tuesday
<b>JUMATANO</b>	(The 5 <sup>th</sup> day of the week)	Wednesday
<b>ALHAMISI</b>	(five)	Thursday
<b>IJUMAA</b>	(assembly)	Friday

### 2. THE GREGORIAN CALENDAR :

There are two ways for naming the months in Swahili : either by giving them an ordinal number : first month, second month, etc... or by giving them their English names, with an adapted spelling.

<b>Mwezi wa ...</b>		
<b>MWEZI WA KWANZA</b>	<b>JANUARI</b>	January
<b>MWEZI WA PILI</b>	<b>FEBRUARI</b>	February
<b>MWEZI WA TATU</b>	<b>MACHI</b>	March
<b>MWEZI WA NNE</b>	<b>APRILI</b>	April
<b>MWEZI WA TANO</b>	<b>MEI</b>	May
<b>MWEZI WA SITA</b>	<b>JUNI</b>	June
<b>MWEZI WA SABA</b>	<b>JULAI</b>	July
<b>MWEZI WA NANE</b>	<b>AGOSTI</b>	August
<b>MWEZI WA TISA</b>	<b>SEPTEMBA</b>	September
<b>MWEZI WA KUMI</b>	<b>OKTOBA</b>	October
<b>MWEZI WA KUMI NA MOJA</b>	<b>NOVEMBA</b>	November
<b>MWEZI WA KUMI NA MBILI</b>	<b>DESEMBA</b>	December



## Chapter 25 - The U- Gender

The **U-** gender is actually composed of 2 distinct classes of nouns, that jointly share the nominal prefix **U-** in the singular. This gender has no specific plural.

These 2 classes are :

- Class 11, that contains nouns of concrete objects that make their plural in class 10, and more rarely in class 6.
- Classe 14, that countains abstract singular nouns.

### 1. NOUNS IN CLASS 11 :

#### a) Concrete nouns with various plurals :



SINGULIER	PLURIEL	Classe	Traduction
Ua	maua	Cl 6	a flower, flowers
Ua	nyua	Cl 10	a courtyard, courtyards
Ubao	bao	Cl 10	a board, boards
Udevu	ndevu	Cl 10	a hair of beard, a beard
Ufa	nyufa	Cl 10	a crack, cracks
Ufunguo	funguo	Cl 10	a key, keys
Ugomvi	magomvi	Cl 6	a quarrel, quarrels
Ugonjwa	magonjwa	Cl 6	a disease, diseases
Ukoo	koo	Cl 10	a clan, clans
Ukuta	kuta	Cl 10	a wall, walls
Ulimi	ndimi	Cl 10	the tongue, tongues
Uma	nyuma	Cl 10	a fork, forks
Unywele	nywele	Cl 10	a hair, the hair
Upande	pande	Cl 10	a side, sides

<b>Upanga</b>	<b>panga</b>	CI 10	a machete, machetes
<b>Upepo</b>	<b>pepo</b>	CI 10	wind, bad spirits
<b>Usiku</b>	<b>siku</b>	CI 10	the night, the day
<b>Uso</b>	<b>nyuso</b>	CI 10	a face, faces
<b>Utambi</b>	<b>tambi</b>	CI 10	a wick, wicks
<b>Uvumbi</b>	<b>vumbi</b>	CI 10	a grain of dust, dust
<b>Uzi</b>	<b>nyuzi</b>	CI 10	a thread, threads
<b>Wakati</b>	<b>nyakati</b>	CI 10	time, times
<b>Wembe</b>	<b>nyembe</b>	CI 10	a razor blade, razor blades
<b>Wimbo</b>	<b>nyimbo</b>	CI 10	a song, songs

**b) uncountable nouns, without plural :**

<b>NOUN</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>Udongo</b>	the soil, the ground
<b>Ugali</b>	maize paste
<b>Uji</b>	porridge
<b>Ukimwi</b>	AIDS
<b>Ulimwengu</b>	the world
<b>Umeme</b>	electricity
<b>Umri</b>	age
<b>Unga</b>	flour
<b>Usingizi</b>	sleep
<b>Uwongo</b>	a lie
<b>Wino</b>	ink

**2. NOUNS IN CLASS 14 :**

Most of them are formed from an adjectival, nominal or verbal root.

**a) Adjectival root :**

<b>ADJECTIVE</b>	<b>Translation</b>	<b>NOUN</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>-baya</b>	bad	<b>Ubaya</b>	maliciousness

<b>-chafu</b>	dirty	<b>Uchafu</b>	dirtiness
<b>huru</b>	free	<b>Uhuru</b>	freedom
<b>-jinga</b>	stupid	<b>Ujinga</b>	stupidity
<b>-moja</b>	one	<b>Umoja</b>	unity
<b>-refu</b>	long	<b>Urefu</b>	length
<b>safi</b>	clean	<b>Usafi</b>	cleanliness
<b>-sawa</b>	equal	<b>Usawa</b>	equality
<b>-tajiri</b>	rich, wealthy	<b>Utajiri</b>	wealth
<b>-vivu</b>	lazy	<b>Uvivu</b>	laziness
<b>-zuri</b>	beautiful	<b>Uzuri</b>	beauty

**b) Nominal root :**

<b>NOUN</b>	<b>Translation</b>	<b>NOUN</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>Jamaa</b>	a group of people	<b>Ujamaa</b>	a community
<b>Kijana</b>	a young person	<b>Ujana</b>	youth
<b>Maskini</b>	a poor	<b>Umaskini</b>	poverty
<b>Mchawi</b>	a witch	<b>Uchawi</b>	witchcraft
<b>Mfalme</b>	a king	<b>Ufalme</b>	a kingdom
<b>Mtoto</b>	a child	<b>Utoto</b>	childhood
<b>Mzee</b>	an old man	<b>Uzee</b>	old age

**c) Verbal root :**

<b>VERB</b>	<b>Translation</b>	<b>NOUN</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>Kuiba</b>	to steal	<b>Uwizi</b>	theft
<b>Kukosa</b>	to miss	<b>Ukosefu</b>	lack
<b>Kula</b>	to eat	<b>Wali</b>	cooked rice
<b>Kupenda</b>	to love, to like	<b>Upendo</b>	love
<b>Kuweza</b>	to be able	<b>Uwezo</b>	capacity
<b>Kusahau</b>	to forget	<b>Usahaulifu</b>	forgetfulness

**d) Names of countries :**

NAME OF COUNTRY	Translation
Ufaransa	France
Uganda	Uganda
Uhabeshi	Ethiopia
Uhindi	India
Uingereza	England
Ujerumani	Germany
Ulaya	Europe
Uguja	Isle of Zanzibar
Ureno	Portugal
Urusi	Russia
Usukuma	Sukumaland

### 3. CLASS AGREEMENTS OF THE ADJECTIVE :

In the singular, the adjective agrees with the noun by taking the class 3 singular prefix **M-**.

In the plural, the adjective usually agrees with the noun by taking the class 10 prefix **N-** or **Ø-**, or more rarely the class 6 prefix **MA-**.

	Singular		Plural
Ukuta mrefu	a high wall	Kuta ndefu	high walls
Uzi mweupe	a white thread	Nyuzi mweupe	white threads
Upande mmoja	one side	Pande mbili	two sides
Ufunguo mwingine	another key	Funguo nyingine	other keys
Ugomvi mkali	a severe quarrel	Magomvi makali	severe quarrels

#### NOTE :

The names of countries that start with the prefix **U-** behave like the names of countries of the **N-** gender : **Tanzania, Kenya, Misri** (= Egypt), etc. and take class 9 agreements with the verbs, adjectives, possessives and demonstratives.

#### TANZANIAN SLOGAN :

**Uhuru ni Kazi**

MOTTO OF TANZANIA :**UHURU NA UMOJA****VOCABULARY**

<b>Ubishi</b>	a quarrel
<b>Uchache</b>	scarcity
<b>Ufagio, fagio</b>	a broom, a brush
<b>Ukuni, kuni</b>	firewood
<b>Ukurasa, kurasa</b>	a page
<b>Unono</b>	wellbeing, comfort

<b>Upana</b>	width
<b>Ushi, nyushi</b>	an eyebrow
<b>Ushirika</b>	a cooperative
<b>Uta, nyuta</b>	an arc
<b>Wema</b>	kindness
<b>Wivu</b>	jealousy

Cross Word Puzzle

**EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- A key, a board, a side, a tongue, the face, dust, a song, porridge, time, a beard, the hair, firewood, machetes, dust, wicks, diseases, sleep, ink, electricity, the ground.
- Freedom, beauty, unity, cleanliness, dirtiness, childhood, old age, lack, love, capacity, forgetfulness, poverty, wealth, the length, stupidity, France, England, Germany, the Isle of Zanzibar, Portugal.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

**Ufagio mdogo, ukuta mrefu, uso mzuri, kuni nyingi, uzi mweusi, pande mbili, ufunguo mpya, magonjwa makubwa, ulimi mchafu, nyuma safi, wimbo mzuri, nywele nyeusi, udongo mzuri, wino mwekundu, unga mzuri, upendo mkubwa, nyembe kali, mbao nzito, ndevu ndefu, usiku**



**mweusi.**

**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into English :

1. Taa hizi mbili zataka tamba mpya.
2. Mbao hizi ndefu mno.
3. Vibarua wanahitaji panga tatu na fagio nne.
4. Nipike nini leo : Wali au ugali ?
5. Uji huu mzuri sana.
6. Msichana huyu ana nywele ndefu nyeusi.
7. Nimepotea funguo zangu : siwezi kufungua mlango !
8. Wakati huu kuna upepo mkali kabisa.
9. Mzee yule amelala usingizi uani.
10. Kuni zote zimekwisha. Lete nyingine !
11. Mwalimu anatumia ubao mweusi shuleni.
12. Lete nyuma, visu na vijiko mezani.
13. Ana ugomvi mkali na jamaa zake.
14. Duka la ushirika linauza unga wa ngano.
15. Tanganyika imepata uhuru wake mwaka wa elfu moja mia tisa sitini na moja.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 26 - Place

### 1. THE LOCATIVE SUFFIX :

There exists in Swahili a very convenient way to translate "inside", "in", "on" or "at" : in order to do this, we simply add the suffix **-NI** at the end of a noun.

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>Bahari</b>	= the sea	-> <b>Bahari-ni</b>	= on the sea / at sea
<b>Bandari</b>	= the harbour	-> <b>Bandari-ni</b>	= in the harbour
<b>Meza</b>	= the table	-> <b>Meza-ni</b>	= on the table
<b>Njia</b>	= the way	-> <b>Njia-ni</b>	= on the way
<b>Nyumba</b>	= the house	-> <b>Nyumba-ni</b>	= in the house / at home
<b>Shamba</b>	= the farm	-> <b>Shamba-ni</b>	= at the farm / in the country
<b>Shule</b>	= the school	-> <b>Shule-ni</b>	= at school

This system has also given proper names of districts or villages :

<b>Bwawa</b>	= marsh	-> <b>Bwawa-ni</b>	= on the marshes
<b>Daraja</b>	= bridge	-> <b>Daraja-ni</b>	= by the bridge
<b>Forodha</b>	= customs	-> <b>Forodha-ni</b>	= at the customs
<b>Mgomba</b>	= banana tree	-> <b>Mgomba-ni</b>	= where there is a banana tree
<b>Mkunazi</b>	= jujub tree	-> <b>Mkunazi-ni</b>	= where there is a jujub tree
<b>Msasa</b>	= rough plant	-> <b>Msasa-ni</b>	= where there are rough plants
<b>Mto</b>	= river	-> <b>Mto-ni</b>	= by the river

However, proper names of cities and countries, as well as some common place nouns (**Posta** = the post-office, **Bara** = a continent, **Markiti** = a market) do not take that suffix, thus :

<b>Nakwenda Dodoma</b>	I go to Dodoma	<i>(I go Dodoma)</i>
<b>Wamefika Zanzibar</b>	They arrived in Zanzibar	<i>(They have arrived Zanzibar)</i>
<b>Wazazi wangu wanakaa Iringa</b>	My parents live in Iringa	<i>(My parents live Iringa)</i>
<b>Yuko Posta</b>	He is at the post-office	<i>(He is post-office)</i>

### 2. Where ? :

To ask : "where ?", we use the interrogative adverb : **WAPI ?**

(See : [Chapter 21 - Interrogative Words](#).)

**Unakwenda wapi ?**

Where do you go ?

**Mbeya iko wapi ?**

Where is Mbeya ?

### 3. ADVERBS / PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE:

(See also : [Chapter 45 - The Connectives "PA", "MWA" and "KWA"](#).)

<b>Baina (ya)</b>	between
<b>Chini (ya)</b>	under, below
<b>Juu (ya)</b>	on top, above
<b>Kando (ya)</b>	beside, along
<b>Karibu (na)</b>	near, close to
<b>Kati (ya)</b>	between, in the middle of
<b>Katika</b>	in, inside, on
<b>Katikati (ya)</b>	among
<b>Mbali (na)</b>	far, far from
<b>Mbele (ya)</b>	in front of
<b>Miongoni mwa</b>	among
<b>Ndani (ya)</b>	in, inside
<b>Ng'ambo (ya)</b>	on the other side of
<b>Nje (ya)</b>	outside
<b>Nyuma (ya)</b>	behind
<b>Toka / Kutoka</b>	from

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>Chagua kimoja baina ya vitu hivi</b>	Choose one of these things
<b>Paka amelala chini ya kitanda</b>	The cat is sleeping under the bed
<b>Weka kikapu juu ya kiti</b>	Put the basket on the chair
<b>Wanafuata mfereji kando ya barabara</b>	They follow the ditch along the road
<b>Simama karibu na moto</b>	Stand close to the fire
<b>Hamisi yupo kati ya Ali na Juma</b>	Hamisi is between Ali and Juma
<b>Panya ameingia katika shimo</b>	The mouse has entered ( <i>inside</i> ) the hole
<b>Anapanda katika mti mkubwa ule</b>	He is climbing on that big tree
<b>Mgonjwa ameondoka katika kitanda</b>	The patient has left the bed

**Mwembe mmoja unasimama katikati ya ua**  
**Usiende mbali na nyumba**  
**Walimu wameketi mbele ya wanafunzi**  
**Miongoni mwa watoto, mmoja anasimama**  
**Ninasafiri mpaka Mwanza**  
**Kuna vitu mbalimbali ndani ya sanduku**  
**Siwezi kufika ng'ambo ya mto ule**  
**Alipata mkate toka / kutoka mjini**

A mango tree stands in the middle of the courtyard  
 Don't go far from the house  
 The teachers are sitting in front of the pupils  
 Among the children, one is standing  
 I'm travelling up to Mbeya  
 There are various things inside the trunk  
 I can't reach the opposite bank of that river  
 He got bread from the city

#### 4. DEMONSTRATIVES / ADVERBS OF PLACE :

They are usually placed after the noun.

There are 9 adverbs of place, which are used according to the degree of proximity and the nature of the place. These are derived from the locative prefixes **PA, KU, MU**.

	DEMONSTRATIVES / ADVERBS OF PLACE		
	PROXIMITY	DISTANCE	REFERENCE
PRECISE PLACE	<b>HAPA</b> = here	<b>PALE</b> = over there	<b>HAPO</b> = there
VAGUE PLACE	<b>HUKU</b> = around here	<b>KULE</b> = by over there	<b>HUKO</b> = there around
INTERIOR PLACE	<b>HUMU</b> = here inside	<b>MLE</b> = there inside	<b>HUMO</b> = inside

#### EXAMPLES :

**Usiweke mzigo hapa. Weka mzigo pale !**  
**Mtoto yuko wapi ? - Amekwenda kule !**

Don't put the luggage here. Put the luggage over there !  
 Where is the child ? - He has gone somewhere over there !

**Lile joka limeingia mle shimoni.**  
**Humu nyumbani hamkai mtu.**

This large snake has entered (*inside*) the hole.  
 Nobody lives in this house.

#### VOCABULARY

**Chatu**

a python

**Nyani**

a baboon

<b>Chui</b>	a leopard	<b>Nyati / Mbogo</b>	a buffalo
<b>Duma</b>	a cheetah	<b>Paa</b>	an impala
<b>Fisi</b>	a hyena	<b>Swala</b>	a gazelle
<b>Mamba</b>	a crocodile	<b>Tai</b>	a vulture
<b>Ngamia</b>	a camel	<b>Tumbili</b>	a monkey

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. At home, on the way, at sea, at school, at the market, on the plantation, in the bush, on the table, on the chair, in the basket, in the trunk, at work, in bed, at the door, on the veranda, by the bridge, at the customs, by the river, on the marshes, at the banana plantation.
- b. I go to Nairobi, they climb Mount Kilimanjaro, they are in Dar es Salaam, I have arrived in Zanzibar, they live in Iringa, the gentleman is at the post-office, where do you go ? I go to town, where do you all go ? We are going to England, he comes from Mbeya, my house is near the post-office, they live on the other bank of the river, the child is behind the tree, put the basket over there.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mnakwenda wapi ? - Tunakwenda Posta.
2. Wazazi wako wanakaa wapi ?
3. Wanakaa mjini Zanzibar.
4. Nyumba yao iko karibu na msikiti mkuu.
5. Weka viazi na vitunguu katika kikapu.
6. Watoto wako wapi ? - Wako shuleni.
7. Mwalimu anasimama mbele ya wanafunzi.
8. Kuna panya kubwa chini ya kitanda.
9. Bwana yupo ? - Hayupo, anafanya safari kwenda Serengeti.
10. Wageni wanakaa Hoteli ya Kati, huko Iringa.
11. Kitoto ameondoka katika kitanda.
12. Basi hili linakwenda mpaka Nairobi.
13. Wazanzibari wapenda kutembea Forodhani jioni, kando ya bahari.
14. Nyani mmoja anasimama kule, katikati ya miti.
15. Angalia vizuri ! Mamba wengi wanalala huku, karibu na mto.



## Chapter 27 - Emphatics

### DEFINITION :

An emphatic is a word used to stress or reinforce an element in the speech. One can roughly translate the Swahili emphatic by the words "indeed" or "the very" in English.

The Swahili emphatic is a word whose root is **NDI-** and whose termination changes according to the noun to which it agrees.

### 1. SIMPLE EMPHATICS :

GENDERS / Classes	EMPHATICS	
	Singular	Plural
<b>M-/WA-</b> (Classes 1 / 2)	<b>ndiye</b>	<b>ndio</b>
<b>M-/MI-</b> (Classes 3 / 4)	<b>ndio</b>	<b>ndiyo</b>
<b>JI-/MA-</b> (Classes 5 / 6)	<b>ndilo</b>	<b>ndiyo</b>
<b>KI-/VI-</b> (Classes 7 / 8)	<b>ndicho</b>	<b>ndivyo</b>
<b>N-</b> (Classes 9 / 10)	<b>ndiyo</b>	<b>ndizo</b>
<b>U-</b> (Classes 11, 14 / 10)	<b>ndio</b>	<b>ndizo</b>
<b>PA</b> (Locative Class 16)	<b>ndipo</b>	
<b>KU</b> (Locative Class 17)	<b>ndiko</b>	
<b>MU</b> (Locative Class 18)	<b>ndimo</b>	

### EXAMPLES :

**Mpishi yule ndiye hodari**

That cook is indeed gifted

**Hawa ndio watu walioniiba mizigo yangu**

They are the very people who stole us our luggage

**Huu ndio mkoba wangu**

It's indeed my bag

**Hicho ndicho kitu nilichokitafuta**

This is the very thing I was looking for

**Dawa hii ndiyo nzuri sana**

This medicine is indeed very good.

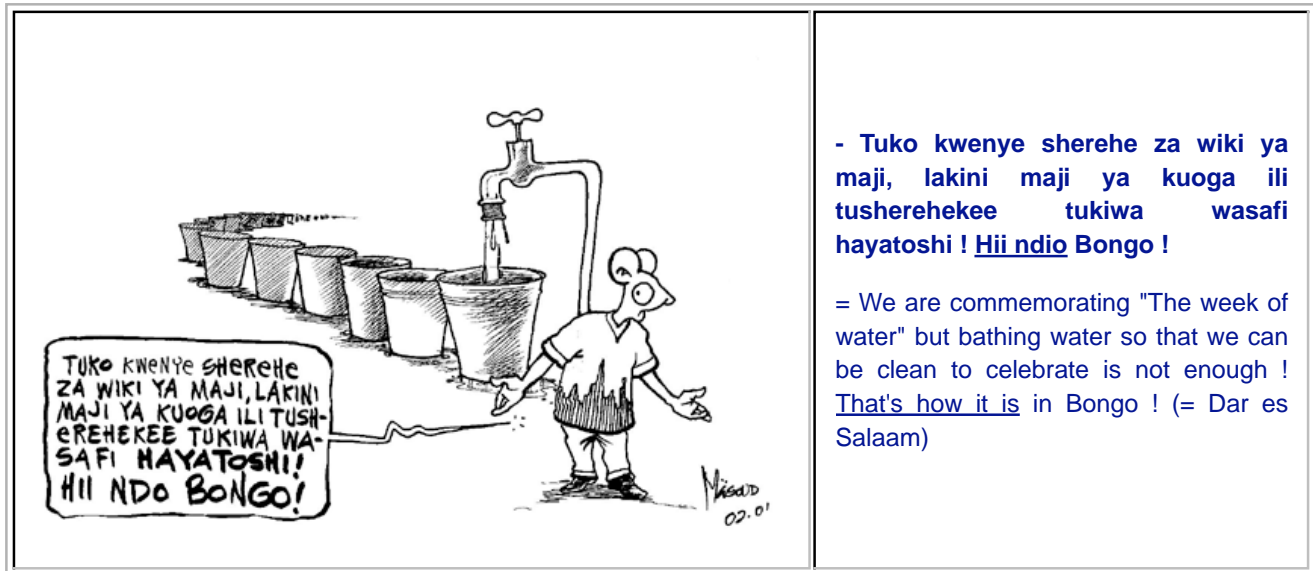
**Saa moja ndipo alipofika**

He arrived actually at 7 o'clock

### NOTE :

One often comes across verbs with the relative (**walioniiba**, **nilichokitafuta**, **alipofika**) in

this type of speech. Several lessons will be devoted to the relative tenses further on. (See : [Chapter 52](#) et [Chapter 53](#).)



## 2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :

The emphatics possess a negative form. In order to achieve this, the affirmative root **NDI-** is replaced by the negative root **SI-** : it's actually the negative form of the verb **KUWA** (= to be) in the present tense.

GENDERS / Classes	EMPHATICS	
	Singular	Plural
<b>M-/WA-</b> (Classes 1 / 2)	<b>siye</b>	<b>sio</b>
<b>M-/MI-</b> (Classes 3 / 4)	<b>sio</b>	<b>siyo</b>
<b>JI-/MA-</b> (Classes 5 / 6)	<b>silo</b>	<b>siyo</b>
<b>KI-/VI-</b> (Classes 7 / 8)	<b>sicho</b>	<b>sivyo</b>
<b>N-</b> (Classes 9 / 10)	<b>siyo</b>	<b>sizo</b>
<b>U-</b> (Classes 11, 14 / 10)	<b>sio</b>	<b>sizo</b>
<b>PA</b> (Locative Class 16)	<b>sipo</b>	
<b>KU</b> (Locative Class 17)	<b>siko</b>	
<b>MU</b> (Locative Class 18)	<b>simo</b>	

### EXAMPLES :

**Huyu siye mtu aliyeniiba saa yangu**

This is not the person who stole me my watch

**Sivyo nilivyosema**

This is not what I said

**Nani alichukua fedha zangu ? - Sio mimi**

Who took my money ? - Not me

### 3. EMPHATIC PRONOUNS :

The autonomous subject pronouns possess emphatic forms. The three persons singular are often contracted, the three persons plural more rarely so.

Full form	Contracted form	Translation
<b>Ndiye mimi</b>	<b>Ndimi</b>	It's me
<b>Ndiye wewe</b>	<b>Ndiwe</b>	It's you
<b>Ndiye yeye</b>	<b>Ndiye</b>	It's him / her
<b>Ndio sisi</b>	<b>(Ndisi)</b>	It's us
<b>Ndio ninyi</b>	<b>(Ndinyi)</b>	It's you (Plur)
<b>Ndio wao</b>	<b>(Ndio)</b>	It's them

#### EXAMPLES :

**Nani atakwenda mjini ? - Ndimi**

Who will go to town ? - That's me

**Nani amevunja kioo hicho ? - Ndiye, Mama**

Who has broken this mirror ? - It's him, Mum

Emphatic pronouns in the third person singular and plural possess a contracted negative form :

Full form	Contracted form	Translation
<b>Si yeye</b>	<b>Siye</b>	It's not him / her
<b>Si wao</b>	<b>Sio</b>	It's not them

### 4. "NDIYO" & "SIYO" :

The emphatics **NDIYO** and **SIYO** have given the words "yes" and "no".

**- Ukupata fedha zako ? - Ndiyo Bwana.** You haven't got your money (*have you ?*) ? - Yes, Sir.

It should be noted that if someone answers **Ndiyo** to a negative question, he / she implicitly agrees with what has been said. In the present case, the answer **Ndiyo Bwana** means "what you say is true", i.e. : "Indeed, I didn't get it".



That would normally correspond to "No, I didn't" in English !

#### OTHER EXAMPLES :

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| - <b>Ninunue mkate ?</b>    | - <b>Ndiyo, nunua !</b>        |
| - Should I buy bread ?      | - Yes, buy some !              |
| - <b>Ninunue mkate ?</b>    | - <b>Siyo, usinunue !</b>      |
| - Should I buy bread ?      | - No, don't !                  |
| - <b>Nisinunue mkate ?</b>  | - <b>Ndiyo, usinunue !</b>     |
| - Shouldn't I buy bread ?   | - Yes ( <i>No</i> ), don't !   |
| - <b>Nisinunue mkate ?</b>  | - <b>Siyo, nunua !</b>         |
| - Shouldn't I buy bread ? ? | - No ( <i>Yes</i> ) buy some ! |

## VOCABULARY

<b>Ku-chinja</b>	to kill, to sacrifice	<b>Ku- tafuna</b>	to chew
<b>Ku-kataa</b>	to refuse	<b>Ku-ua</b>	to kill
<b>Ku-kubali</b>	to agree	<b>Ku-uma</b>	to hurt
<b>Ku-nawa</b>	to wash one's hands	<b>Ku-winda</b>	to hunt
<b>Ku-pumzika</b>	to rest	<b>Ku-zima</b>	to extinguish
<b>Ku-saidia</b>	to help	<b>Ku-zungumza</b>	to speak

#### Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

#### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. This pupil is very lazy.
2. But this one is very clever.
3. These people are indeed robbers.
4. This wine is indeed very good.
5. We do come at nine o'clock.
6. This piece of luggage is indeed mine.
7. It IS the bus to Mombasa.
8. It's the very thing I was looking for.
9. This is not the thief.

10. It's not what I said.
11. Who goes to the post-office today ? - That's me.
12. Tell me who broke that window ? - That's him.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

1. Ninunue nyama ? - Ndiyo, nunua kilo moja.
2. Hii ndiyo nyama ya mbuzi.
3. Siyo nyama ya nguruwe.
4. Hukupata mshahara wako ? - ndiyo bwana.
5. Nani anachinja mbuzi ? - Ndiye Musa.
6. Nani aliiba mkoba wangu ? - Sio mimi.
7. Gari hili ndilo gari langu.
8. Mchuzi huu ndio mtamu sana.
9. Huyu ndiye mtu aliyenisaidia.
10. Wanafunzi hawa sio wajinga.
11. Kitabu hiki sicho nitakacho.
12. Mimi ndiye mwanao, baba. Huyu siye.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 28 - Prepositions and Conjunctions

### REMINDER :

A preposition is a word that enables to locate something in space or time. In this chapter we are going to review the prepositions of time. The prepositions of place have already been studied in a previous chapter. (See : [Chapter 26 - Place](#).)

A conjunction is a word that binds 2 groups of words, or 2 clauses. For example : John and Jane ; I drink because I am thirsty ; I think that you are nice.

### 1. PREPOSITIONS

1. **BAADA YA** = after

**Alirudi nyumbani baada ya kumaliza kazi.** He returned home after finishing work.

2. **HATA** = till, until

**Atakaa hapa hata kesho.** He will remain here till tomorrow.

3. **KABLA (YA)** = before

**Kabla hujaondoka, funga mlango.** Close the door before leaving.

4. **KISHA** = then , and then

**Nenda markiti, nunua mboga, kisha rudi hapa.** Go to the market, buy vegetables, then come back here.

5. **MPAKA** = till, until

**Alifanya kazi mpaka saa moja ya usiku.** He worked until seven in the evening.

6. **TANGU / TOKA** = from, since

**Atakaa hoteli toka leo mpaka kesho kutwa.** He will stay at the hotel from today till the day after tomorrow.

### 2. CONJUNCTIONS

1. **AMA** = or, nor

**Ndivyo ama sivyo ?** Yes or no ?.

2. **AMA ... AMA** = either ... or

**Ama ni wewe, ama ni ndugu yako.** Either it's you, or it's your brother.

3. **AU** = or

**Lete mkate mweusi au mweupe.** Bring brown bread or white bread.

4. **BADALA YA** = instead of

**Alikwenda Arusha badala ya kwenda Dar es Salaam.** He went to Arusha instead of going to Dar es Salaam.

5. **BALI** = but rather, on the contrary

**Kusema kiswahili si vigumu, bali ni rahisi kabisa.** Speaking Swahili is not difficult, on the contrary it's very easy.

6. **BASI** = then, well, so, that's all

**Nilitaka sana kuona wanyama, basi nilifika hapa.** I really wanted to see animals, so I came here.

**Basi ? - Ndiyo.** Is that all ? - Yes.

7. **BILA** = without

**Mtoto alifika bila vitabu vyake.** The child arrived without his books.

**Alikwenda Tanzania bila kuona Zanzibar.** He went to Tanzania without seeing Zanzibar.

8. **IJAPO** = even if

**Ijapo nitakufa, sitakubali.** Even if I die, I won't agree.

9. **ILA** = except

**Wanafunzi hawa ni hodari, ila ni huyu.** These pupils are hard working, except this one.

**Watu wote wamefika ila mwalimu tu.** Everybody arrived, except the teacher.

10. **ILI / ILI KWAMBA** = so as, so that, in order to

**Nakwenda bandari ili ninunue samaki.** I go to the harbour so as to buy fish.

11. **INGAWA** = although, even though

**Ameфика kazini ingawa mtoto wake mgonjwa.** She has come for work, even though her child is sick.

12. **JUU YA HAYO** = moreover

**Chakula ni haba, juu ya hayo ni ghali mno.** Food is scarce, moreover it is too expensive.

13. **KAMA** = if, around, like

**Kama atakuja, nitangoja.** If he must come, I'll wait.

**Ninahitaji sanduku kama hili.** I need a trunk like this one.

**Utakaa kwa muda gani hapa ? - Kama miezi mitatu.** How long will you stay ? - Around three months.

**Alisema kama ndivyo hivyo.** He said it was like that.

14. **KAMA KWAMBA / KANA KWAMBA** = as if

**Alicheza pamoja na simba kana kwamba ni wanambuzi.** He played with the lions as if they were kids.

15. **KISHA** = moreover

**Mwanafunzi huyu hasomi shuleni, kisha hajui kuandika.** This pupil does not work at school, moreover he cannot write.

16. **KUSUDI** = to, in order to

**Amejenga nyumba kubwa kusudi kufanya hoteli.** He has built a big house to make a hotel.

17. **KWA** = for, to, by, with

**Anafanya kazi kwa Bwana Manji.** He works for Mr Manji.

**Kata nanasi kwa kisu !** Cut the pineapple with a knife.

**Tulikuja hapa kwa miguu.** We came here by foot.

**Nitakula wali kwa mchuzi.** I will eat rice with sauce.

18. **KWA AJILI YA** = because of

**Kwa ajili ya kunyesha mvua, hatukuja.** Because of the rain, we didn't come.

19. **KWA HIYO / KWA HIVYO / KWA VILE** = so, because of that, in consequence

**Sikupata habari, kwa hiyo sikuja.** I didn't get the news, so I didn't come.

20. **KWA KUWA** = because

**Hatukuja kwa kuwa ilinyesha mvua.** We didn't come because it rained.

21. **KWA MAANA YA** = because of

**Hatukuja kwa maana ya mvua.** We didn't come because of the rain.

22. **KWA SABABU (YA) / KWANI** = because

**Tulikuja Tanzania kwa sababu tulitaka kupanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro.** We came to Tanzania because we wanted to climb Mount Kilimanjaro.

**Angalia vizuri kabla ya kupita mto kwani kuna viboko wengi.** Watch carefully before crossing the river because there are many hippos.

23. **KWAMBA / KUWA** = that

**Mpishi anasema kwamba baba yake amekufa.** The cook says his / her father has died.

**Ninaona kwamba mnyama huyu ni mkali.** I see that this animal is savage.

**Barua yake yasema kuwa ni mgonjwa.** His / her letter says that he / she is sick.

24. **LAKINI / WALAKINI** = but, however

**Ninasoma kiswahili, lakini sielewi kitu.** I learn Swahili, but I don't understand anything.

25. **NA** = and, with

**Lete kuku na wali na mboga mbali mbali.** Bring chicken and rice and different vegetables.

26. **PAMOJA (NA)** = with, together with

**Rafiki yangu amekuja pamoja na watoto wake.** My friend has arrived with his / her children.

27. **PAMOJA NA HAYO / JUU YA HAYO / ZAIDI YA HAYO** = moreover, besides

**Hana tiketi yake, zaidi ya hayo hana fedha.** He / she hasn't got his / her ticket, besides he / she has no money.

28. **TENA (NA)** = again, moreover

**Sijui mtoto huyu, tena sijamwona.** I don't know this child, moreover I have never seen him.

29. **WALA** = either, neither

**Hakuna mchele wala (hakuna) unga.** There is no rice and no flour either.

30. **WALA ... WALA** = neither ... nor

**Sikuwaona, wala yeye wala ndugu zake.** I didn't see them, neither him nor his brothers.

31. **YAANI** = i.e., that is to say

**Hili ndilo neno la kigeni, yaani kiingereza.** This is indeed a foreign word, that is, English.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Adui, ma-</b>	an enemy
<b>Bakuli</b>	a vessel
<b>Binamu</b>	a cousin
<b>Bunduki</b>	a gun, a rifle
<b>Kofia</b>	a hat
<b>Ndoo</b>	a pail, a bucket

<b>Malaika</b>	an angel
<b>Panga, ma-</b>	a machete
<b>Pepo</b>	a spirit
<b>Raia</b>	a citizen
<b>Taa</b>	a lamp
<b>Yaya</b>	a nanny

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. These people have neither cows nor goats.
2. He came yesterday, but he has already left.
3. The child is crying because he is lost.
4. Even though the food is good, the child did not eat it.
5. He hurries in order to arrive first.
6. I have no money, so I can't buy anything.
7. He says he is coming back tomorrow.
8. Don't you know that your grandfather is in hospital ?
9. You work like an ass.
10. We arrived at the school by foot.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Neno hili si kweli, bali ni uongo kabisa.
2. Analia kwa sababu mama yake mgonjwa.
3. Ninahitaji viatu vipya lakini sina fedha.
4. Mwalimu anasema kwamba atachelewa kidogo.
5. Ninakuja markiti mapema ili nipate nyama.
6. Lete kahawa au chai.
7. Ninakula chakula kabla ya kwenda kazini.
8. Anapumzika baada ya kurudi nyumbani.
9. Watoto wamekula wali kwa mchuzi.
10. Tunakwenda Iringa kwa basi.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 29 - Possession

### 1. THE CONNECTIVE PARTICLE "-A" :

The English possessive case "'s", which is often equivalent to "of" when it marks possession, is translated in Swahili by a particle whose root is **-A**. The connective particle **-A** agrees in class with the noun of the thing (or person) possessed.

Class	Connective	Example	Translation
Cl 1	WA	Mwana wa baba.	Father's child.
Cl 2	WA	Wana wa baba.	Father's children.
Cl 3	WA	Mti wa baba.	Father's tree.
Cl 4	YA	Miti ya baba.	Father's trees.
Cl 5	LA	Gari la baba.	Father's car.
Cl 6	YA	Magari ya baba.	Father's cars.
Cl 7	CHA	Kiti cha baba.	Father's chair.
Cl 8	VYA	Viti vya baba.	Father's chairs.
Cl 9	YA	Nguo ya baba.	Father's garment.
Cl 10	ZA	Nguo za baba.	Father's clothes.
Cl 11/14	WA	Uso wa baba.	Father's face.

#### WORD ORDER AND EXAMPLES :

The word order in the Swahili sentence is the same as in English, when possession is conveyed by "of". The only difference is that the adjective must follow the noun it qualifies.

<b>Mtoto mdogo wa mama.</b>	The small child of Mother.
<b>Mikono mikubwa ya mtoto mdogo.</b>	The large hands of the small child.
<b>Viatu vichafu vya mtoto.</b>	The dirty shoes of the child.
<b>Gari jipya la baba.</b>	The new car of Father.

### 2. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS :



Possessive adjectives and pronouns agree in class with the noun of the possessed object / person. The class prefixes, identical to those of the connective particle, are affixed to the following possessive markers :

<b>-ANGU</b>	my	mine
<b>-AKO</b>	your	yours
<b>-AKE</b>	his, her	his, hers
<b>-ETU</b>	our	ours
<b>-ENU</b>	your	yours
<b>-AO</b>	their	theirs

**NOTE :** When the possessor is not a human being but a thing, we use the marker **-AKE**, both in singular and plural :

<b>Nyumba na mlango wake</b>	The house and its door
<b>Gari na milango yake</b>	The car and its doors
<b>Mti na matunda yake</b>	The tree and its fruit
<b>Miti na matunda yake</b>	The trees and their fruit

#### 1. WITH NOUNS OF THE M-/WA- GENDER (Classes 1 / 2) :

<b>Mwana wangu</b>	my child	<b>Wana wangu</b>	my children
<b>Mwana wako</b>	your child	<b>Wana wako</b>	your children
<b>Mwana wake</b>	his / her child	<b>Wana wake</b>	his / her children
<b>Mwana wetu</b>	our child	<b>Wana wetu</b>	our children
<b>Mwana wenu</b>	your child	<b>Wana wenu</b>	your children
<b>Mwana wao</b>	their child	<b>Wana wao</b>	their children

#### 2. WITH NOUNS OF THE M-/MI - GENDER (Classes 3 / 4) :

<b>Mti wangu</b>	my tree	<b>Miti yangu</b>	my trees
<b>Mti wako</b>	your tree	<b>Miti yako</b>	your trees
<b>Mti wake</b>	his / her tree	<b>Miti yake</b>	his / her trees
<b>Mti wetu</b>	our tree	<b>Miti yetu</b>	our trees
<b>Mti wenu</b>	your tree (plur)	<b>Miti yenu</b>	your trees (plur)
<b>Mti wao</b>	their tree	<b>Miti yao</b>	their trees

### 3. WITH NOUNS OF THE JI-/MA- GENDER (Classes 5 / 6) :

<b>Gari langu</b>	my car	<b>Magari yangu</b>	my cars
<b>Gari lako</b>	your car	<b>Magari yako</b>	you cars
<b>Gari lake</b>	his / her car	<b>Magari yake</b>	his / her cars
<b>Gari letu</b>	our car	<b>Magari yetu</b>	our cars
<b>Gari lenu</b>	your car (plur)	<b>Magari yenu</b>	your cars (plur)
<b>Gari lao</b>	their car	<b>Magari yao</b>	their cars

### 4. WITH NOUNS OF THE KI-/VI- GENDER (Classes 7 / 8) :

<b>Kiti changu</b>	my chair	<b>Viti vyangu</b>	my chairs
<b>Kiti chako</b>	your chair	<b>Viti vyako</b>	your chairs
<b>Kiti chake</b>	his / her chair	<b>Viti vyake</b>	his / her chairs
<b>Kiti chetu</b>	our chair	<b>Viti vyetu</b>	our chairs
<b>Kiti chenu</b>	your chair (plur)	<b>Viti vyenu</b>	your chairs (plur)
<b>Kiti chao</b>	their chair	<b>Viti vyao</b>	their chairs

### 5. WITH NOUNS OF THE N- GENDER (Classes 9 / 10) :

<b>Nguo yangu</b>	my garment	<b>Nguo zangu</b>	my clothes
<b>Nguo yako</b>	your garment	<b>Nguo zako</b>	your clothes
<b>Nguo yake</b>	his / her garment	<b>Nguo zake</b>	his / her clothes
<b>Nguo yetu</b>	our garment	<b>Nguo zetu</b>	our clothes
<b>Nguo yenu</b>	your garment (plur)	<b>Nguo zenu</b>	your clothes (plur)
<b>Nguo yao</b>	their garment	<b>Nguo zao</b>	their clothes

### 6. WITH NOUNS OF THE U- GENDER (Classes 11, 14 / 10) :

<b>Uso wangu</b>	my face	<b>Nyuso zangu</b>	my faces
<b>Uso wako</b>	your face	<b>Nyuso zako</b>	your faces
<b>Uso wake</b>	his / her face	<b>Nyuso zake</b>	his / her faces
<b>Uso wetu</b>	our face	<b>Nyuso zetu</b>	our faces
<b>Uso wenu</b>	your face	<b>Nyuso zenu</b>	your faces
<b>Uso wao</b>	their face	<b>Nyuso zao</b>	their faces

**3. CONTRACTED FORMS : PERSON + POSSESSIVE ADJ. :**

<b>Baba yangu</b>	<b>-&gt; Babangu</b>	<b>= my father</b>
<b>Baba yako</b>	<b>-&gt; Babako</b>	<b>= your father</b>
<b>Baba yake</b>	<b>-&gt; Babake</b>	<b>= his / her father</b>
<b>Mama yangu</b>	<b>-&gt; Mamangu</b>	<b>= my mother</b>
<b>Mama yako</b>	<b>-&gt; Mamako</b>	<b>= your mother</b>
<b>Mama yake</b>	<b>-&gt; Mamake</b>	<b>= his / her mother</b>
<b>Mke wako</b>	<b>-&gt; Mkeo</b>	<b>= your wife</b>
<b>Mke wake</b>	<b>-&gt; Mkewe</b>	<b>= his wife</b>
<b>Mume wako</b>	<b>-&gt; Mumeo</b>	<b>= your husband</b>
<b>Mume wake</b>	<b>-&gt; Mumewe</b>	<b>= her husband</b>
<b>Mwana wangu</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwanangu</b>	<b>= my child</b>
<b>Mwana wako</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwanao</b>	<b>= your child</b>
<b>Mwana wake</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwanawe</b>	<b>= his / her child</b>
<b>Mwenzi wangu</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwenzangu</b>	<b>= my comrade</b>
<b>Mwenzi wako</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwenzako / -zio</b>	<b>= your comrade</b>
<b>Mwenzi wake</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwenzake / -zie</b>	<b>= his / her comrade</b>
<b>Mwenzi wetu</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwenzetu</b>	<b>= our comrade</b>
<b>Mwenzi wenu</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwenzenu</b>	<b>= your comrade (plur)</b>
<b>Mwenzi wao</b>	<b>-&gt; Mwenzao</b>	<b>= their comrade</b>

Likewise in plural :	<b>-&gt; Wenzangu</b>	<b>= my comrades</b>
	<b>-&gt; Wenzako / -zio</b>	<b>= your comrades</b>
	<b>-&gt; Wenzake / -zie</b>	<b>= his / her comrades</b>
	<b>-&gt; Wenzetu</b>	<b>= our comrades</b>
	<b>-&gt; Wenzenu</b>	<b>= your comrades (plur)</b>
	<b>-&gt; Wenzao</b>	<b>= their comrades</b>

<b>Ndugu yako</b>	<b>-&gt; Nduguyo</b>	<b>= your friend</b>
<b>Ndugu yake</b>	<b>-&gt; Nduguye</b>	<b>= his / her friend</b>
<b>Ndugu zako</b>	<b>-&gt; Nduguzo</b>	<b>= your friends</b>
<b>Ndugu zake</b>	<b>-&gt; Nduguze</b>	<b>= their friends</b>

**4. TWO PARTICULAR POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES / PRONOUNS :**

1. The connective particle **ZA-** linked to possessive markers conveys the meaning "away" and produces the following series of possessive pronouns :

<b>Ninakwenda <u>ZANGU</u></b>	I go away
<b>Unakwenda <u>ZAKO</u></b>	You go away
<b>Anakwenda <u>ZAKE</u></b>	He / she goes away
<b>Tunakwenda <u>ZETU</u></b>	We go away
<b>Mnakwenda <u>ZENU</u></b>	You go away (plur)
<b>Wanakwenda <u>ZAO</u></b>	They go away

2.

The locative particles **PA-**, **KU-**, **MU-** linked to possessive markers convey the meaning "at home" and produce the following series of possessive adjectives / pronouns :

<b>PANGU</b>	<b>KWANGU</b>	<b>MWANGU</b>	at my home
<b>PAKO</b>	<b>KWAKO</b>	<b>MWAKO</b>	at your home
<b>PAKE</b>	<b>KWAKE</b>	<b>MWAKE</b>	at his / her home
<b>PETU</b>	<b>KWETU</b>	<b>MWETU</b>	at our home
<b>PENU</b>	<b>KWENU</b>	<b>MWENU</b>	at your home (plur)
<b>PAO</b>	<b>KWAO</b>	<b>MWAO</b>	at their home

NOTE 1 :

These are the possessives we use after nouns suffixed in **-NI** (= at, in, on, by) which, in a way, have left their native noun class to join the locative classes :

<b>Nyumbani kwangu</b>	at my home	<b>Nyumbani kwetu</b>	at our home
<b>Nyumbani kwako</b>	at your home	<b>Nyumbani kwenu</b>	at your home (plur)
<b>Nyumbani kwake</b>	at his / her home	<b>Nyumbani kwao</b>	at their home

EXAMPLES :

<b>Bwana hayumo chumbani mwake</b>	The master is not in his room
<b>Anarudi kisiwani kwake katika ziwa</b>	He goes back to his island on the lac
<b>Wamo nyumbani mwao</b>	They are in their house
<b>Kwenu ku wapi ?</b>	Where is your place ?
<b>Wamekwenda zao</b>	They have gone away
<b>Kwetu hakuna mahindi mengi</b>	At our place there is not much corn
<b>Mkoba huu ni wa nani ? - Ni wa kwangu</b>	Whose bag is it ? - It's (of) mine

NOTE 2 :

The plural **KWAO** (= their) is most often used for a collective place (like a house, an office, etc.), even when the possessor is singular :

EXAMPLES :**Mtoto hayuko skuli, amekwenda kwao**The child is not at school, he has gone back home (*to their place*)**Maskini hana kwao**The poor man has no home (*at their's*)**Ngoja niulize ofisini kwao**Wait that I ask at his office (*at their office*)**EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. Father's child, Mother's children, my mother's bag, my parents' house, the child's ball, the children's plates, my sister's utensils, my brother's garment, the pupils' food, his father's car, my mother's drugs, my comrade's face, my comrades' faces, a village of fishermen, a charcoal bag, a 4 gallon can of onions, a kilo of meat, the way to the house, the well of the village, Swahili lessons.
- b. My child, my children, my car, my house, my work, your village, your uncle, your friends, your father, your bag, your dog, her husband, his wife, her comrades, his shop, his money, our comrades, our house, our school, our city, our ministers, your country (plur), your car (plur), your children (plur), your songs (plur), your pupils (plur), their clothes, their house, their faces, their comrades.
- c. Mine (bag), mine (mother), yours (ball), mine (pupils), his (field), yours (chickens), ours (car), hers (sheets), ours (clothes), yours (village), yours (plur) (cows), theirs (hospital), theirs (crops), his (blanket), hers (cups).

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- 1. Ninakwenda zangu.
- 2. Mama hayumo jikoni mwake.
- 3. Kwenu ku wapi ?
- 4. Mtoto hayuko skuli, amerudi kwao.
- 5. Mtu huyo mkorofi amechukua mkoba wangu.
- 6. Kwetu kuna mahindi mengi.
- 7. Mkoba huo wa nani ? - Ni wa kwangu.
- 8. Twende zetu haraka !
- 9. Huyo maskini hana kwao.
- 10. Uko peke yako ? - Ndiyo, wenzangu wamekwenda zao.



## Chapter 30 - Object Infixes

There is no autonomous pronoun object or pronoun attribute in Swahili. The same way as the pronoun subject is integrated into the verbal construction as a subject prefix, the pronoun object or pronoun attribute is inserted into the verb as an object infix. It is located right before the verbal root.

First, here are a few examples, to help understand better this phenomenon :

1. U-NA- <u>NI</u> -ONA	-> Unan <u>iona</u>	= you see <u>me</u> .	Pronoun object
2. NA- <u>KU</u> -AMBIA	-> Naku <u>ambia</u>	= I tell <u>you</u> .	Pronoun attribute
3. A-NA- <u>M</u> -PIGA	-> Anam <u>piga</u>	= he / she hits <u>him</u> / <u>her</u> .	Pronoun object

Pronoun object infixes exist for all nominal classes, with a special series of infixes for the **M-/WA-** gender. They serve indifferently as pronoun object or pronoun attribute.

### 1. ANIMATE AND INANIMATE PRONOUN OBJECT INFIXES :

GENDER / Classes	SINGULAR	Equivalent	PLURAL	Equivalent
1	-NI-	me	-TU-	us
2	-KU-	you	-WA- ... (-NI)	you
M-/WA- (CI 1 / 2) 3	-M- / -MW-	him, her	-WA-	them
M-/MI- (CI 3 / 4)	-U-	it	-I-	them
JI-/MA- (CI 5 / 6)	-LI-	it	-YA-	them
KI-/VI- (CI 7 / 8)	-KI-	it	-VI-	them
N- (CI 9 / 10)	-I-	it	-ZI-	them
U- (CI 11, 14 / 10)	-U-	it	-ZI-	them

You may notice the risk of confusion between the object infix of the 2<sup>nd</sup> person plural and that of the 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural which are both **-WA-**.

Thus : **Nawaambia** can mean : "I tell you" or "I tell them".

To avoid this risk of confusion, we usually add the plural termination **-NI** at the end of the verb when dealing with the object infix of the 2<sup>nd</sup> person plural. The termination **-A** of Bantu verbs changes into **-E**. Another possibility is to use

the object infix of the 2<sup>nd</sup> person singular, together with the plural termination **-NI**.

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>Nawaambia</b>	= I tell <u>you</u>	<b>Nawaambia</b>	= I tell <u>them</u>
<b>Nawaambieni</b>			
<b>Nakuambieni</b>			
<b>Nawaomba</b>	= I ask <u>you</u>	<b>Nawaomba</b>	= I ask <u>them</u>
<b>Nawaombeni</b>			
<b>Nakuombeni</b>			

## 2. USE OF THE OBJECT INFIX :

The object infix replaces or reinforces, either a noun object or a noun attribute. Just as the subject prefix is present in the sentence together with the noun subject, the object infix keeps inserted in the verbal construction, even when the noun object or attribute is present in the sentence. It then reinforces that one.

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>Mwite !</b>	Call <u>him / her</u> !
<b>Mwite daktari !</b>	Call ( <i>him / her</i> ) <u>the doctor</u> !
<b>Nipe kilo mbili za vitunguu !</b>	Give <u>me</u> two kilos of onions !
<b>Mwanangu yuko wapi ? - Sikumwona</b>	Where is <u>my child</u> ? - I didn't see <u>him / her</u>
<b>Je, umesoma kitabu hiki ? - Nilikisoma</b>	I say, have you read <u>that book</u> ? - I have read <u>it</u>
<b>Je, umeleta mizigo yangu ? - Ndiyo, Nimejweka chumbani mwako</b>	I say, have you brought <u>my luggage</u> ? - Yes, I put <u>it</u> in your bedroom

## 3. NOTES :

1. In the IMPERATIVE, the presence of an object infix involves a modification of the final vowel **-A** into **-E**. Thus :

<b>Nunua !</b>	= buy !	-> <b>Ninunue !</b>	= buy ( <i>for</i> ) <u>me</u> !
<b>Saidia !</b>	= help !	-> <b>Wasaidie !</b>	= help <u>them</u> !
<b>Angalia !</b>	= look !	-> <b>Zingalie !</b>	= look at <u>them</u> !

However, verbs of Arabic origin do not change their final vowel, hence a slight risk of confusion :

<b>Bariki !</b>	= bless !	-> <b>Tubariki !</b>	= bless <u>us</u> !	(Not : let's bless !)
		-> <b>Wabariki !</b>	= bless <u>them</u> !	(Not : Let them bless !)

2. Swahili accepts ONLY ONE object infix in the verbal construction. Thus :

**Unacho kitabu changu ? - Ndiyo, Nitakurudisha kesho.**

Have you got my book ? - yes, I will give *(it)* back to you tomorrow.

In this example, the pronoun attribute **-KU-** (= you) holds the slot of the object infix, the pronoun object corresponding to "it" (= the book) is implicit. The attribute has always precedence over the object for insertion inside the verbal construction.

NOW, LEARN THE NATIONAL ANTHEM OF TANZANIA :

Mungu ibariki Afrika  
wabariki viongozi wake  
Hekima, umoja na amani  
Hizi ni ngao zetu  
Afrika na watu wake

## VOCABULARY

<b>Ku-agiza</b>	to order	<b>Ku-pa</b>	to give
<b>Ku-ambia</b>	to tell	<b>Ku-pokea</b>	to receive
<b>Ku-elewa</b>	to understand	<b>Ku-salimu</b>	to greet
<b>Ku-ita</b>	to call	<b>Ku-shiba</b>	to be satisfied / satiated
<b>Ku-kataza</b>	to refuse, to forbid	<b>Ku-sukuma</b>	to push
<b>Ku-kuta</b>	to meet	<b>Ku-zuia</b>	to prevent

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :



Call him ! Help me ! Look at them (the children) ! Look at them (things) ! Give me ! Tell me ! Tell us ! I saw you, He saw her, I saw you (plur), they told us, he told me, I told you, I gave it to you, he called me, I called them (the children), I read it (the book), Have you read it (the book) ? Did she take it (the book) ? Did she take them (the books) ?

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Nakuambia.
2. Sikuelewi.
3. Kisu changu kiko wapi ? - Nimekiweka mezani.
4. Mizigo yangu yako wapi ? - Yako nyumbani.
5. Nimwite nani ? - Mwite Ali !
6. Bwana yupo wapi ? - Nilimkutana kazini.
7. Nisaidie na mizigo yangu !
8. Sema polepole kwa sababu Sikuelewi !
9. Mtoto mdogo anamwogopa kaka yake.
10. Usinipe mkate wa jana. Nipe wa leo !

---

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 31 - The Suffix "-O" of Reference

The "-O" of reference is used in many different ways, the common denominator point between all these uses being that it always refers to a noun implicitly present in the speech.

- It helps to form the demonstrative of reference. (See : [Chapter 15.](#))
- It helps to form the emphatics of **NDIYO** and **SIYO** type. (See : [Chapter 27.](#))
- It can be affixed to the associative particle **NA** (= and, with).
- It plays the role of pronoun object with the verb **KUWA NA**.
- It can be affixed to the adjective **-INGINE** (= other).
- It constitutes the first element in the expression **-O -OTE**.
- It helps to form locative prepositions and clauses. (See : [Chapter 45.](#))
- "-O" affixed to a verb corresponds to a relative pronoun. (See : [Chapter 52.](#))

The suffix "-O" of reference agrees in class with the noun it refers to, using the series of pronominal prefixes. One exception : the suffix of reference for class 1 = **-YE**.

GENDER / Classes	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<b>M-/WA-</b> (Cl 1/2)		<b>-YE</b>	WA+O	<b>-(W)O</b>
<b>M-/MI-</b> (Cl 3/4)	U+O	<b>-(W)O</b>	I+O	<b>-YO</b>
<b>JI-/MA-</b> (Cl 5/6)	LI+O	<b>-LO</b>	YA+O	<b>-YO</b>
<b>KI-/VI-</b> (Cl 7/8)	KI+O	<b>-CHO</b>	VI+O	<b>-VYO</b>
<b>N-</b> (Cl 9/10)	I+O	<b>-YO</b>	ZI+O	<b>-ZO</b>
<b>U-</b> (Cl 11, 14 /10)	U+O	<b>-(W)O</b>	ZI+O	<b>-ZO</b>
<b>KU-</b> (Cl 15)	KU+O	<b>-KO</b>		
<b>Locative Classes</b>	PA+O	<b>-PO</b>		
	KU+O	<b>-KO</b>		
	M(U)+O	<b>-MO</b>		

### 1. The "-O" of reference affixed to "NA" :

The "-O" of reference clings to the particle **NA**, respecting noun class agreements.

EXAMPLES :

**Wazazi wangu wanakaa mjini. Ninakaa karibu nao.**  
**Uko mpira mpya. Watoto wanacheza nao.**  
**Hiyo kazi nzuri. Uendelea nayo.**

My parents live downtown. I live close to them.  
 Here is a new ball. The children are playing with it.  
 This is good work. Carry on with it.

## 2. The "-O" of reference as pronoun object :

The verb **KUWA NA** (= to have), does not accommodate the usual pronoun object infix. In this particular instance, it's the suffix **"-O"** of reference that plays the role of pronoun object. Yet, it can only be used in the affirmative.

### EXAMPLES :

**Una kitabu ? - Ninacho / Sina.**

Have you got your book ? - I have it / I don't have it.

**Punda anaye Ali ? - Anaye / Hana.**

Has Ali got a donkey ? - He has got one / He hasn't any.

**Hamisi anavyo vitabu vyangu.**  
**Vitabu vyangu anavyo Hamisi.**

Hamisi has got my books.

## 3. The "-O" of reference affixed to "-INGINE" :

The adjective **-INGINE** (= other) followed by the suffix **"-O"** takes the particular meaning of "as", "like".

### EXAMPLES :

**Watu wengineo.**

Other people like them.

**Mambo mengineyo.**

Other similar matters.

**Vyombo vinginevyo.**

Other tools like those.

**Mahali penginepo.**

Other similar places.

## 4. The "-O" of reference in the clause "-O -OTE" :

This clause means "Whoever / whatever / wherever / any / anybody / anything / ...".

### EXAMPLES :

**Kiasi cho chote.**

Any quantity.

**Ko kote uendako.**

Wherever you go.

**Kwa vyo vyote.**

In any case.

Uliza mtu ye yote.

Ask anybody.

Siwezi kukupa (kitu) cho chote.

I can't give you anything.

## VOCABULARY

<b>aina</b>	a species	<b>bahasha</b>	an envelope
<b>akiba</b>	a reserve, an economy	<b>bendera</b>	a flag
<b>alama</b>	a sign, a mark	<b>bilauri</b>	a glass
<b>amri</b>	an order, a command	<b>birika</b>	a tea pot
<b>anwani</b>	an address	<b>bustani</b>	a garden
<b>asili</b>	the origin	<b>chapa</b>	a brand (commercial)

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. I go with him.
2. I go with them.
3. The children are playing with her (the cat).
4. the day laborers are leaving with it (the car).
5. The travellers arrive with it (the luggage).
6. I live close to them.
7. Have you got a glass ? - I have one.
8. Have you got a tea pot ? - I don't.
9. Have your parents got a garden ? - They have one.
10. Has the hunter got a gun ? - He doesn't.
11. Let's examine similar matters.
12. They live with other people like them.
13. Take any glass.
14. Ask your way to anybody.
15. Give him anything.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Kitabu hiki ndicho nikitakacho.
2. Katika bustani yetu mna michungwa na miti mengineyo.
3. Walikuja askari na watu wengineo.
4. Nunua chapa ye yote ya mafuta.
5. Usimpe kitanda mgonjwa ye yote.
6. Mtoto ye yote anaweza kwenda shuleni.
7. Una sukari ? - Ninayo.
8. Mgonjwa ana dawa ? - Hana.
9. Sokoni kuna watu ? - Hakuna.
10. Unazo habari za mwenzetu kijijini ?
11. Humo nyumbani, kitu cho chote ni chake mwenyewe.
12. Wanafunzi wana kalamu ? - Wanazo.
13. Nyumba yako ni ipi ? - Ni hii, nayo pia ni mbovu.
14. Nataka kujenga nyingine, lakini hapana matofali yo yote.
15. Ninaweza kufanya kazi ya seremala na kazi nyinginezo.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 32 - Simple Past Tense

The Simple Past in Swahili marks a clear rupture between the present moment and the past. Like in English, it is often accompanied by precise marks of time such as : date, day, month, year, dated event, etc.. This tense is naturally translated by the Simple Past in English.

### 1. SIMPLE PAST - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Simple Past affirmative is the infix **-LI-** which is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verbal root.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + LI + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL :     **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>NI-LI-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; nilifanya</b>	I made
<b>U-LI-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; ulifanya</b>	you made
<b>A-LI-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; alifanya</b>	he / she made
<b>TU-LI-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tulifanya</b>	we made
<b>M-LI-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mlifanya</b>	you made
<b>WA-LI-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; walifanya</b>	they made

### CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs retain the **KU** of the infinitive in the Simple Past affirmative.

MODEL :     **KULA** = to eat

<b>NI-LI-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; nilikula</b>	I ate
<b>U-LI-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; ulikula</b>	you ate
<b>A-LI-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; alikula</b>	he / she ate
<b>TU-LI-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; tulikula</b>	we ate
<b>M-LI-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; mlikula</b>	you ate
<b>WA-LI-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; walikula</b>	they ate

## 2. THE SIMPLE PAST - NEGATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Simple Past negative is the infix **-KU-** which is placed between the negative subject prefix and the verbal root.

### NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + KU + VERB RADICAL

MODEL :     **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>SI-KU-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; sikufanya</b>	I didn't make
<b>HU-KU-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hukufanya</b>	you didn't make
<b>HA-KU-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hakufanya</b>	he / she didn't make
<b>HATU-KU-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatukufanya</b>	we didn't make
<b>HAM-KU-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hamkufanya</b>	you didn't make
<b>HAWA-KU-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hawakufanya</b>	they didn't make

### CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs drop the **KU** of the infinitive in the Simple Past negative.

MODEL :     **KULA** = to eat

<b>SI-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; sikula</b>	I didn't eat
<b>HU-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; hukula</b>	you didn't eat
<b>HA-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; hakula</b>	he / she didn't eat
<b>HATU-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatukula</b>	we didn't eat
<b>HAM-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; hamkula</b>	you didn't eat
<b>HAWA-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; hawakula</b>	they didn't eat

## 3. SOME EXAMPLES :

**Ulikuwa wapi ?**

**Nilikuwa likizo.**

**Walikwenda Mombasa mwaka jana.**

**Mkulima alilima shamba lake mwezi uliopita.**

Where were you ?

I was on holiday.

They went to Mombasa last year.

The farmer cultivated his field last month.

**Mpishi hakupata mshahara wake.**  
**Sikufaulu mtihani wangu.**  
**Mtoto mgonjwa hakuweza kula.**

The cook didn't get his wages.  
 I didn't pass my examination.  
 The sick child couldn't eat.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Ku-chuma</b>	to pick	<b>Ku-ongeza</b>	to increase
<b>Ku-fyeka</b>	to cut grass	<b>Ku-panga</b>	to plan
<b>Ku-inua</b>	to raise, to lift	<b>Ku-poa</b>	to cool
<b>Ku-jaza</b>	to fill	<b>Ku-sitawi</b>	to thrive, to develop
<b>Ku-kauka</b>	to dry	<b>Ku-tembea</b>	to walk, to go for a walk
<b>Ku-ng'oa</b>	to uproot	<b>Ku-tunza</b>	to care

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- I made, I wrote, I started, I hunted, I got accustomed, you planned, you wiped, you rested, he killed, he left, she arrived, she took, he refused, we raised, we helped them, we spoke, we sacrificed, you looked at, you filled, you cut the grass, you went for a walk, they cultivated, they hunted, they finished, they ate.
- He didn't make, you didn't make, he didn't eat, she did not leave, we didn't understand, we didn't ask, I didn't read, I didn't agree, I didn't rest, you couldn't, you didn't listen (plur), they didn't play, they didn't start, you didn't help (plur), they didn't come, you didn't wash your face, they didn't agree, they didn't speak, it was not sufficient, it did not hurt.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

- Niliacha, nilitafuta, niliua, aliniuliza, alikataa, aliniona, uliniita, ulishika, alizoea, tulipokea, tulichinja, tulizungumza, walitembea, walijificha, alijiuma.
- Sikuweza, sikununua, sikusikia, hukunipa, hukusema, hukupata, hakufika, hakunawa, hatukukubali, hatukupumzika, hatukulala, hamkuzoea, haikutosha, hawakujaza, hawakufyeka.



**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into English :

1. Tulikwenda Mikumi wiki iliyopita.
2. Tulonga wanyama wengi pale.
3. Lakini hatukuona kifaru wala kiboko.
4. Je, ulipata kuona kikundi cha simba ?
5. Ndiyo, niliona simba dume mmoja na simba jike wanne.
6. Je, mtoto alikula chakula chake asubuhi ?
7. La, hakula kitu, ila ni mkate mdogo tu.
8. Umeshakwenda kisiwani mwa Zanzibar ?
9. Ndiyo, nilisafiri kule mwaka jana.
10. Nilitembea sehemu nyingi mjini, kama markiti na forodhani.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 33 - The Subjunctive

Unlike in English, the Subjunctive is very widely used in Swahili, after words of obligation, advice, suggestion, prohibition, etc. or after a first verb expressing will or not, where English commonly uses an infinitive.

### 1. AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

There is no tense marker in the Subjunctive. The subject prefix is directly followed by the verbal root. The ending **-A** of verbs of Bantu origin changes into **-E**, while verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-I**, **-E**, **-U** do not change. Monosyllabic verbs drop the **KU-** of the infinitive.

#### SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL - E

MODEL 1 (Verbs of Bantu origin) :      **KUSOMA** = to read, to study

<b>NI-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; nisome</b>	<i>that I read</i>
<b>U-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; usome</b>	<i>that you read</i>
<b>A-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; asome</b>	<i>that he / she read</i>
<b>TU-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; tusome</b>	<i>that we read</i>
<b>M-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; msome</b>	<i>that you read</i>
<b>WA-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; wasome</b>	<i>that they read</i>

MODEL 2 (Verbs of Arabic origin) :      **KUJARIBU** = to try

<b>NI-JARIBU</b>	<b>-&gt; nijaribu</b>	<i>that I try</i>
<b>U-JARIBU</b>	<b>-&gt; ujaribu</b>	<i>that you try</i>
<b>A-JARIBU</b>	<b>-&gt; ajaribu</b>	<i>that he / she try</i>
<b>TU-JARIBU</b>	<b>-&gt; tujaribu</b>	<i>that we try</i>
<b>M-JARIBU</b>	<b>-&gt; mjaribu</b>	<i>that you try</i>
<b>WA-JARIBU</b>	<b>-&gt; wajaribu</b>	<i>that they try</i>

MODEL 3 (Monosyllabic verbs) :      **KUJA** = to come

<b>NI-JE</b>	<b>-&gt; nije</b>	<i>that I come</i>
<b>U-JE</b>	<b>-&gt; uje</b>	<i>that you come</i>
<b>A-JE</b>	<b>-&gt; aje</b>	<i>that he / she come</i>
<b>TU-JE</b>	<b>-&gt; tuje</b>	<i>that we come</i>
<b>M-JE</b>	<b>-&gt; mje</b>	<i>that you come</i>
<b>WA-JE</b>	<b>-&gt; waje</b>	<i>that they come</i>

## 2. NEGATIVE FORM :

The negative infix **SI** is inserted between the subject prefix and the verbal root. This negative infix replaces the negative pre-prefix commonly used in the negative forms of other tenses.

### SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + VERB RADICAL - E

MODEL :     **KUSOMA** = to read, to study

<b>NI-SI-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; nisisome</b>	<i>that I don't read</i>
<b>U-SI-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; usisome</b>	<i>that you don't read</i>
<b>A-SI-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; asisome</b>	<i>that he / she don't read</i>
<b>TU-SI-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; tuisome</b>	<i>that we don't read</i>
<b>M-SI-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; msisome</b>	<i>that you don't read</i>
<b>WA-SI-SOME</b>	<b>-&gt; wasisome</b>	<i>that they don't read</i>

As in the affirmative form, verbs of Arabic origin preserve their final vowel :

<b>Ku-fikiri</b>	<b>-&gt; NI-SI-FIKIRI</b>	<i>that I don't think</i>
<b>Ku-jibu</b>	<b>-&gt; WA-SI-JIBU</b>	<i>that they don't answer</i>
<b>Ku-samehe</b>	<b>-&gt; U-SI-SAMEHE</b>	<i>that you don't forgive</i>

Monosyllabic verbs drop the **KU-** of the infinitive :

<b>Kw-enda</b>	<b>-&gt; A-SI-ENDE</b>	<i>that he / she don't go</i>
<b>Ku-ja</b>	<b>-&gt; WA-SI-JE</b>	<i>that they don't come</i>
<b>Ku-wa</b>	<b>-&gt; U-SI-WE</b>	<i>that you don't be</i>

## 3. DIFFERENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE :

### 1. The Polite Imperative :

(See : [Chapter 4 : The Polite Imperative.](#))

#### EXAMPLES :

**Tafadhali unisaidie !**

Please, help me !

**Mjaribu kusema kiswahili !**

Try (plur.) to speak Swahili !

### 2. The Imperative of the 1st person plural :

(See : [Chapter 4 : The Imperative of the 1st person plural.](#))

#### EXAMPLES :

**Twende kazini !**

Let's go to work !

**Tujenge taifa letu !**

Let's build our nation !

**Tusifanye fujo !**

Don't let's make disorder !

### 3. Expressing a suggestion, a wish, a request :

It is used for all persons except the 2<sup>nd</sup> person singular and plural.

#### EXAMPLES :

**Tujifunze kwa bidii.**

Let's learn with energy.

**Mambo haya yaishe !**

Let these matters cease !

### 4. Asking for advice or approval :

#### EXAMPLES :

**Nikusaidie ?**

May I help you ?

**Aende wapi ?**

Where should he go ?

**Nimwambie nini ?**

What shall I tell him ?

5. 2<sup>nd</sup> verb in an imperative sentence, or in indirect speech :EXAMPLES :**Njoo ule !**

Come and eat !

**Pokea barua yako uisome !**

Receive your letter and read it !

**Mwambie aje kesho !**

Tell him to come tomorrow !

## 6. After expressions of obligation or necessity :

EXPRESSIONS OF OBLIGATION :

<b>Afadhali</b>	(you) had better	<b>Sharti</b>	(you) must
<b>Bora</b>	(you) had rather	<b>Yafaa</b>	it's appropriate to
<b>Heri</b>	it's preferable to	<b>Ya---bidi</b>	(you) must
<b>Lazima</b>	(you) must	<b>Ya---pasa</b>	(you) have to

EXAMPLES :**Afadhali utusaidie !**

Please help us !

**Bora tuamke mapema !**

We had rather wake up early !

**Heri waende nyumbani !**

They should go back home !

**Lazima uende hospitali.**

You must go to hospital.

**Sharti tukamate mwizi huu.**

We have to catch this thief.

**Yafaa uanze kwanza.**

It's appropriate that you start first.

**Yatubidi tumjulishe habari hizi.**

We must tell him this news.

**Yawapasa wahudhurie mkutano.**

They have to attend the meeting.

## 7. Expressing purpose or intention :

<b>Ili</b>	so that	<b>Kusudi</b>	in order to
------------	---------	---------------	-------------

EXAMPLES :**Alinisaidia ili nimalize kazi mapema.**

He helped me so that I finish work early.

**Twafuga kuku ili tupate mayai.**

We breed hens in order to get eggs.

**Alikaribia kusudi aweze kuona vizuri.**

He came nearer to see better.

## 8. Subordinate clause :

After the following verbs :

<b>Ku-amuru</b>	to order	<b>Ku-omba</b>	to ask, to beg
<b>Ku-acha</b>	to leave, to allow	<b>Ku-penda</b>	to like, to wish
<b>Ku-fanya</b>	to make	<b>Ku-shauri</b>	to advise
<b>Ku-kubali</b>	to agree	<b>Ku-taka</b>	to want

EXAMPLES :

<b>Aliwaamuru wamrudishie mali yake.</b>	He ordered them to return him his property.
<b>Umwache aende zake.</b>	Let him go away.
<b>Walinifanya nikate tamaa.</b>	They made me loose heart.
<b>Walikubali tufunge mapema.</b>	They accepted that we close early.
<b>Namwomba aje.</b>	I ask him to come.
<b>Wapenda twende wapi ?</b>	Where do you want us to go ?
<b>Nakushauri urudi nyumbani.</b>	I advise you to go back home.
<b>Sitaki awe na mawazo haya.</b>	I don't want him to have such ideas.

9. **After some prepositions :**After the following prepositions :

<b>Hadi</b>	till, until	<b>Tangu</b>	from, since
<b>Hata</b>	till, until	<b>Karibu</b>	nearly, almost
<b>Mpaka</b>	till, until		

EXAMPLES :

<b>Atumie dawa hii hadi apone.</b>	She must use this drug until she is cured.
<b>Utanisumbua hata nikasirike ?</b>	Will you annoy me until I get cross ?
<b>Ngoja mpaka arudi.</b>	Wait till he / she comes back.
<b>Karibu tuondoke.</b>	We are about to leave.
<b>Tangu tufike hatujapata chai.</b>	We haven't got tea since we arrived.

10. **Negative Subjunctive after verbs of restriction or prohibition :**After the following verbs :

<b>Ku-kanya</b>	to forbid, to prevent	<b>Ku-onya</b>	to inform
<b>Ku-kataza</b>	to refuse	<b>Ku-zuia</b>	to prevent, to forbid
<b>Ku-linda</b>	to protect		

EXAMPLES :

<b>Wakanyeni watoto wasigombane.</b>	Prevent the children from quarrelling.
--------------------------------------	--

**Wazazi wamemkataza asiolewe mwaka huu.**  
**Chakula bora chatulinda tusipatwe na magonjwa.**  
**Nakuonya usirudie kosa lile.**  
**Askari alinizuia nisipite.**

Her parents refused her to marry this year.  
 Better food protects us from catching diseases.  
 I warn you not to repeat this mistake.  
 A soldier forbid me to pass.

11.

**Fruitless effort :**

#### EXAMPLES :

**Walimtafuta wasimwone.**  
**Nilijaribu kufungua mlango huu nisiweze.**  
**Tulisafiri kwa haraka tulivyoweza tusifike Arusha mapema.**

They sought him but didn't find him.  
 I tried to open this door but I failed.  
 We travelled as quickly as possible but we failed to arrive early in Arusha.



#### Chakubanga

- Ni lazima tufanye 'plakatisi' kali, na tukikosa kombe la ulimwengu, basi hata la ahera tusilikose.
- Labda wasituchague !
- We have to 'practice' hard, and if we miss the world cup, then we shouldn't miss the regional.
- Maybe they won't choose us !

#### NOW, LEARN THE NATIONAL ANTHEM OF KENYA :

**Ee Mungu nguvu yetu**  
**Ilete baraka kwetu**  
**Haki iwe ngao na mlinzi**  
**Na tukae na udugu**

Amani na uhuru  
Raha tupate na ustawi

## VOCABULARY

<b>Baiskeli</b>	a bicycle	<b>Petroli</b>	petrol, gasoline
<b>Benki</b>	a bank	<b>Picha</b>	a photo, a picture
<b>Hoteli</b>	a hotel, a restaurant	<b>Polisi</b>	the police
<b>Jela</b>	a prison, a jail	<b>Sigara</b>	a cigarette
<b>Kampuni</b>	a company	<b>Sinema</b>	a cinema
<b>Oili</b>	motor oil	<b>Shati</b>	a shirt

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### **EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. [That] I plan, I understand, I give up, you thrive, you breed, you fill, he be satiated, he receive, he increase, we take a walk, we refuse, you prevent, you wipe, they meet, they call.
- b. [That] I don't ask, I don't know, you don't say, you don't meet, he don't push, he don't leave, she don't catch, we don't call, we don't make, you don't read (plur), you don't come (plur), they don't answer, they don't think, they don't leave, they don't see.

### **EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. Should he come in?
2. When shall we leave ?
3. Should the cook buy meat ?
4. Must I close the door ?
5. Come and see !
6. Tell Hamisi to go to the market.



7. Tell the cook to do the cooking.
8. He must go.
9. She went to the market to buy vegetables.
10. I study this book to learn Swahili.

**EXERCISE 3 :** Translate into English :

1. Watoto wacheze mpira leo ? - Ndiyo, wacheze.
2. Wanafunzi waende zao ? - Wasiende bado.
3. Mwambie Hamisi anipe cheti chake.
4. Mwombe mkurugenzi atupe jibu.
5. Lazima wanafunzi wachukue kuni kwa kupika chakula.
6. Ukitaka dawa, sharti uje na chupa.
7. Twende pwani sasa ili tupumzike.
8. Tulikuja Tanzania ili tuone wanyama.
9. Askari polisi walizuia watu wasiingie katika benki.
10. Mama amemkataza mtoto asiende sinema.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 34 - Future Tense

The tense marker of the FUTURE is the infix **-TA-**.

### 1. FUTURE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker **-TA-** is inserted between the subject prefix, identical to that of the present, and the verbal root :

**SUBJECT PREFIX + TA + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL :     **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>NI-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; nitafanya</b>	I will make
<b>U-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; utafanya</b>	you will make
<b>A-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; atafanya</b>	he / she will make
<b>TU-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tutafanya</b>	we will make
<b>M-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mtafanya</b>	you will make
<b>WA-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; watafanya</b>	they will make

### CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs retain the **KU-** of the infinitive in the Future affirmative.

MODEL :     **KULA** = to eat

<b>NI-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; nitakula</b>	I will eat
<b>U-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; utakula</b>	you will eat
<b>A-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; atakula</b>	he / she will eat
<b>TU-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; tutakula</b>	we will eat
<b>M-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; mtakula</b>	you will eat
<b>WA-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; watakula</b>	they will eat

## 2. FUTURE - NEGATIVE FORM :

The tense marker **-TA-** is inserted between the negative subject prefix, identical to that of the present, and the verbal root :

### NEGATIVE SUBJECT PREFIX + TA + VERB RADICAL

MODEL :     **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>SI-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; sitafanya</b>	I won't make
<b>HU-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hutafanya</b>	you won't make
<b>HA-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatafanya</b>	he / she won't make
<b>HATU-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatutafanya</b>	we won't make
<b>HAM-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hamtafanya</b>	you won't make
<b>HAWA-TA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; hawatafanya</b>	they won't make

### CASE OF THE MONOSYLLABIC VERBS :

Monosyllabic verbs retain the **KU-** of the infinitive in the Future negative.

MODEL :     **KULA** = to eat

<b>SI-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; sitakula</b>	I won't eat
<b>HU-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; hutakula</b>	you won't eat
<b>HA-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatakula</b>	he / she won't eat
<b>HATU-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; hatutakula</b>	we won't eat
<b>HAM-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; hamtakula</b>	you won't eat
<b>HAWA-TA-KULA</b>	<b>-&gt; hawatakula</b>	they won't eat

## VOCABULARY

**Buibui**            a spider  
**Inzi**                a fly  
**Kupe**                a tick

**Nyuki**             a bee  
**Nyungunyungu**    a worm  
**Nzige**             a locust

<b>Mbung'o</b>	a tsetse fly	<b>Siafu</b>	a soldier ant
<b>Mchwa</b>	a termit	<b>Sisimizi</b>	a small ant
<b>Nge</b>	a scorpion	<b>Tandu</b>	a centipede

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### **EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- I'll see, I'll make, I'll continue, I'll wash, you'll make, you'll take, you'll write, you'll rest, he'll come, he'll explain, he'll read, he'll learn, we will overcome, we will go, we will walk, you will make (plur), you will understand (plur), you will sleep (plur), they will say, they will call, they will give us, you will push (plur), you will receive (plur), they will swipe, they will plan.
- I won't see, I won't come, I will not breed, you will not receive, he will not take, he won't come, she won't go, we won't travel, we won't listen, you will not take a walk (plur), you will not see (plur), they won't give you, they won't prohibit, they will not overcome, they will not understand.

### **EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- Nitanunua nyama kesho.
- Ali atatuleta chakula.
- Hatutaweza kwenda kesho.
- Watamaliza kazi hiyo haraka.
- Tutakula chakula katika hoteli mjini.
- Mwanafunzi atianza mtihani kesho.
- Wafaransa watapanda mlima wa kilimanjaro.
- Kijana huyo atakuwa daktari.
- Watoto wataamka kesho asubuhi.
- Wageni watatembea Zanzibar kesho kutwa.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 35 - The Reflexive Infix "-JI-"

In English, we use the reflexive pronoun "oneself" after the verb to mark that an action is reflexive, i.e. directed towards the subject of the verb.

For example : He sees himself = he looks at his own person (in a mirror, or in imagination, etc.)

In Swahili, we use a particular OBJECT INFIX : **-JI-** inserted between the tense marker and the verbal root. Unlike in English, this infix remains the same for all persons.

EXAMPLE : **KUONA** = to see -> **KUJIONA** = to feel oneself, to be proud of oneself

<b>Ninajiona</b>	I feel <u>myself</u>
<b>Unajiona</b>	you feel <u>yourself</u>
<b>Anajiona</b>	he / she feels <u>himself / herself</u>
<b>Tunajiona</b>	we feel <u>ourselves</u>
<b>Mnajiona</b>	you feel <u>yourselves</u>
<b>Wanajiona</b>	they feel <u>themselves</u>

The reflexive can be used in all tenses, including the infinitive, both in the affirmative and negative forms :

Infinitive :	<b>Kujiona</b>	to feel oneself
Negative Infinitive :	<b>Kutojiona</b>	not to feel oneself
Present Indefinite :	<b>Najiona</b>	I feel myself
Present Definite :	<b>Ninajiona</b>	I'm feeling myself
Present Definite Negative :	<b>Sijioni</b>	I'm not feeling myself
Past Perfect :	<b>Nimejiona</b>	I have felt myself
Past Perfect Negative :	<b>Sijajiona</b>	I haven't felt myself yet
Simple Past :	<b>Nilijiona</b>	I felt myself
Simple past Negative :	<b>Sikujiona</b>	I didn't feel myself
Future :	<b>Nitajiona</b>	I will feel myself
Future Negative :	<b>Sitajiona</b>	I won't feel myself
Conditional :	<b>Ningejiona</b>	I would feel myself
Conditional Negative :	<b>Nisingejiona</b>	I wouldn't feel myself
Past Conditional :	<b>Ningalijiona</b>	I would have felt myself
Past Conditional Negative :	<b>Nisingalijiona</b>	I wouldn't have felt myself

Imperative :

**Jione !**

Feel yourself !

Negative Imperative :

**Usijione !**

Don't feel yourself !

NOTE :

As will be seen in the list below, all reflexive verbs with **-JI-** in Swahili do not systematically correspond to a reflexive in English :

**SOME COMMON REFLEXIVE VERBS :**

<b>Ku-jiburudisha</b>	to refresh oneself	<b>Ku-jisaidia</b>	to relieve oneself
<b>Ku-jidai</b>	to proclaim oneself	<b>Ku-jisifu</b>	to praise oneself
<b>Ku-jifanya</b>	to claim	<b>Ku-jitazama</b>	to look at oneself
<b>Ku-jificha</b>	to hide	<b>Ku-jitegemea</b>	to be self-reliant
<b>Ku-jifunza</b>	to learn	<b>Ku-jitolea</b>	to volunteer
<b>Ku-jigonga</b>	to knock oneself	<b>Ku-jiua</b>	to commit suicide
<b>Ku-jiona</b>	to feel oneself	<b>Ku-jiuliza</b>	to wonder
<b>Ku-jipamba</b>	to adorn oneself	<b>Ku-jiuzulu</b>	to abdicate

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Kaskazi</b>	short rain season	<b>Kusini</b>	South
<b>Kaskazini</b>	North	<b>Magharibi</b>	West
<b>Kiangazi</b>	the hot season	<b>Mashariki</b>	East
<b>Kimbunga</b>	a cyclone, a hurricane	<b>Masika</b>	the rain season
<b>Kipupue</b>	the cold season	<b>Ngurumo</b>	thunder
<b>Kusi</b>	the dry season	<b>Umeme</b>	a flash of lightning

Cross Word Puzzle

**EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. I feel myself, he feels himself, you feel yourselves, I knocked myself, he knocked himself, I hid, he hid, we hid, I praise myself, she praises herself, I wonder, she wonders, we wonder, you volunteered, he proclaims himself, I'm self-reliant, be self-reliant ! Volunteer ! He abdicated, they learned, she adorned herself, prepare yourself ! Look at yourself ! Hide !
- b. Do not praise yourself ! Do not proclaim yourself ! Don't look at yourself ! Don't hide ! She doesn't wonder, they don't wonder, they don't proclaim themselves, I don't feel myself, I don't praise myself, you don't feel yourself, we don't feel ourselves, they don't volunteer, you didn't look at yourself, I didn't learn, he didn't commit suicide.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

**Ninajifunza, anajitolea, wanajifanya, anajipamba, unajisifu, anajificha, wanajitazama, anajidai, amejua, amejuzulu, wanajiona, ninajiuliza, wanajiburudisha, jiulize ! Jitazame ! Tujitegemee ! Msijifiche ! Msijisifu ! Usijipambe ! Usijione ! Tujifanye ! Mjisaidie ! Tujiburudishe ! Nijiburudishe ! Jiburudishe !**

---

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 36 - Verbal Derivation

### 1. USE OF VERBAL DERIVATION :

It is common in Swahili to modify a verb by adding various suffixes at the end of its radical. This phenomenon is called VERBAL DERIVATION.

By way of comparison, we can in English modify the meaning of a verb by adding some prefixes or associating some prepositions to it. For example : to take, to take back, to take away, to undertake, to overtake...

This process, however common, usually modifies the lexical aspect of the verb, without modifying its function.

In Swahili, verbal derivation has for consequence to modify both the meaning and the grammatical employment of the verb in the sentence.

This will translate in English through different processes : addition of another verb (to let, to make, to be), of a reflexive pronoun, of a preposition, change of verb, etc.

We give the name of "FORM" to the various verbal derivations.

### 2. PRINCIPAL VERBAL DERIVATIONS :

#### 1. The PASSIVE FORM : suffix : **-WA, -IWA, -EWA**

Example : **KUTUMA** = to employ                      -> **KUTUMWA** = to be employed

#### 2. The PREPOSITIONAL FORM : suffix : **-IA, -EA, -ILIA, -ELEA**

Example : **KUACHA** = to leave                      -> **KUACHIA** = to leave for / to / with

#### 3. The CAUSATIVE FORM : suffix : **-SA, -SHA, -ISHA, -ESHA, -ZA, -IZA, -EZA, -YA**

Example : **KULA** = to eat                      -> **KULISHA** = to feed



4. The RECIPROCAL FORM : suffix : **-ANA**

Example : **KUSAIDIA** = to help                      -> **KUSAIDIANA** = to help each other

5. The STATIVE FORM : suffix : **-KA, -IKA, -EKA**

Example : **KUPASUA** = to split, to cut                      -> **KUPASUKA** = to split up, able to split

6. The REVERSIVE FORM : suffix : **-UA, -OA, -UKA, -OKA**

Example : **KUFUNGA** = to close, to fasten                      -> **KUFUNGUA** = to unfasten, to open

**3. DOUBLE AND TRIPLE DERIVATION :**

some verbs admit a double, and sometimes a triple derivation, i.e. the simultaneous addition of 2 or 3 derivational suffixes at the end of the verb radical.

These double or triple derivations are always carried out in a determined order :

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| (1) Prepositional + Passive       | suffix : <b>-IWA, -EWA, -LIWA, -LEWA</b> |
| Prepositional + Prepositional     | suffix : <b>-ILIA, -ELEA</b>             |
| Prepositional + Stative           | suffix : <b>-KEA</b>                     |
| Prepositional + Reciprocal        | suffix : <b>-IANA</b>                    |
| (2) Causative + Prepositional     | suffix : <b>-LEZA</b>                    |
| (3) Reciprocal + Causative        | suffix : <b>-ANISHA</b>                  |
| (4) Stative + Prepositional       | suffix : <b>-IKIA</b>                    |
| Stative + Prepositional + Passive | suffix : <b>-IKIWA</b>                   |
| Stative + Causative               | suffix : <b>-IKISHA, -YESHA</b>          |

**4. SOME EXAMPLES :**

(1) <b>Ku-zaa</b> to give birth	<b>Ku-zalwa</b>	Pass	to be born
	<b>Ku-zalia</b>	Prep	to bear him a child
	<b>Ku-zaliwa</b>	Prep+Pass	to be born
	<b>Ku-zalisha</b>	Caus	to deliver a woman
	<b>Ku-zaliana</b>	Rec	to reproduce
(2) <b>Ku-elea</b> to be clear for	<b>Ku-eleza</b>	Caus	to explain
	<b>Ku-elewa</b>	Pass	to grasp, to understand
	<b>Ku-eleleza</b>	Caus+Prep	to explain thoroughly
	<b>Ku-elekea</b>	Prep+Stat	to move towards
(3) <b>Ku-fanya</b> to make, to do	<b>Ku-fanyika</b>	Stat	to be made
	<b>Ku-fanyikia</b>	Stat+Prep	to be made for
	<b>Ku-fanyikiwa</b>	Stat+Prep+Pass	to thrive
	<b>Ku-fanyiza</b>	Caus	to make one do
(3) <b>Ku-funga</b> to close, to fasten	<b>Ku-fungia</b>	Prep	to cloe for, with
	<b>Ku-fungwa</b>	Pass	to be closed
	<b>Ku-fungika</b>	Stat	to close itself, to be closed
	<b>Ku-fungisha</b>	Caus	to make close
	<b>Ku-fungua</b>	Rev	to open, to untie
	<b>Ku-fungana</b>	Rec	to bind together
(4) <b>Ku-jua</b> to know	<b>Ku-julisha</b>	Caus	to inform, to let know
	<b>Ku-juana</b>	Rec	to know one another
	<b>Ku-julikana</b>	Stat	to be known
(5) <b>Ku-ona</b> to see	<b>Ku-onya</b>	Caus	to warn
	<b>Ku-onyesha</b>	Stat+Caus	to show
	<b>Ku-onwa</b>	Pass	to be seen
	<b>Ku-onana</b>	Rec	to see each other
	<b>Ku-onekana</b>	Stat	to show up, to be visible
(6) <b>Ku-penda</b> to like, to love	<b>Ku-pendwa</b>	Pass	to be liked
	<b>ku-pendea</b>	Prep	to like for
	<b>ku-pendewa</b>	Prep+Pass	to be liked for
	<b>Ku-pendelea</b>	Prep+Prep	to favor
	<b>Ku-pendeleza</b>	Caus	to make support
	<b>Ku-pendana</b>	Rec	to love each other
(3) <b>Ku-piga</b> to hit, to strike	<b>Ku-pigia</b>	Prep	to strike for
	<b>Ku-pigwa</b>	Pass	to be struck

<b>Ku-pigika</b>	Stat	can be struck
<b>Ku-pigisha</b>	Caus	to make beat
<b>Ku-pigana</b>	Rec	to fight

This is but a short outline on verbal derivation. The 6 next chapters will be devoted to a detailed study of these verbal forms.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Bati (ma-)</b>	corrugated sheet	<b>Gogo (ma-)</b>	a log
<b>Dau (ma-)</b>	a dhow (boat)	<b>Gurudumu (ma-)</b>	a wheel
<b>Fundo (ma-)</b>	a knot	<b>Jengo (ma-)</b>	a building
<b>Fungu (ma-)</b>	a heap	<b>Koleo (ma-)</b>	a plier
<b>Ganda (ma-)</b>	a hull, skin (of fruit)	<b>Kopo (ma-)</b>	a can
<b>Gereji (ma-)</b>	a garage	<b>Pipa (ma-)</b>	a barrel, a drum

Cross Word Puzzle

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 37 - The Passive Form

It is quite common to put a verb in the passive voice in English. This is done by using the auxiliary verb "to be" followed by the lexical verb in the past participle.

Thus :	He gives	-> He is given	She takes	-> She is taken
	We beat	-> We are beaten	It closes	-> It is closed

The same result is obtained in Swahili by replacing the termination **-A** of the verb with the suffix **-WA** (or **-EWA**, **-IWA**, **-LEWA**, **-LIWA**).

1. When the verb radical ends in a consonant + **A** :

**-A** is replaced by the suffix **-WA** :

<b>Kuandika</b>	to write	-> <b>kuandikwa</b>	to be written
<b>Kuanza</b>	to start	-> <b>Kuanzwa</b>	to be started
<b>Kucheza</b>	to play	-> <b>Kuchezwa</b>	to be played
<b>Kufanya</b>	to make	-> <b>Kufanywa</b>	to be made
<b>Kuficha</b>	to hide	-> <b>Kufichwa</b>	to be hidden
<b>Kufunga</b>	to close	-> <b>Kufungwa</b>	to be closed
<b>Kuiba</b>	to steal	-> <b>Kuibwa</b>	to be stolen (thing)
<b>Kukamata</b>	to catch	-> <b>Kukamatwa</b>	to be caught
<b>Kuleta</b>	to bring	-> <b>Kuletwa</b>	to be brought
<b>Kulima</b>	to cultivate	-> <b>Kulimwa</b>	to be cultivated
<b>Kulipa</b>	to pay	-> <b>kulipwa</b>	to be paid
<b>Kupata</b>	to get	-> <b>Kupatwa</b>	to be got
<b>Kupenda</b>	to love	-> <b>Kupendwa</b>	to be loved
<b>Kupika</b>	to cook	-> <b>Kupikwa</b>	to be cooked
<b>Kusoma</b>	to read	-> <b>Kusomwa</b>	to be read
<b>Kuuma</b>	to hurt	-> <b>Kuumwa</b>	to be hurt, to suffer
<b>Kuweka</b>	to put	-> <b>Kuwekwa</b>	to be put
<b>Kuwindwa</b>	to hunt	-> <b>Kuwindwa</b>	to be hunted

2. When the verb radical ends in the double vowel **-AA** :

**-A** is replaced by **-LIWA** :

<b>Kukataa</b>	to refuse	-> <b>Kukataliwa</b>	to be refused
<b>Kuzaa</b>	to give birth	-> <b>Kuzaliwa</b>	to be born

3. When the verb radical ends in the vowel sequence **-OA** :**-A** is replaced by **-LEWA** :

<b>Kung'oa</b>	to uproot	-> <b>Kung'olewa</b>	to be uprooted
<b>Kuo</b>	to marry	-> <b>Kuolewa</b>	to be married (woman)
<b>Kuondoa</b>	to withdraw	-> <b>Kuondolewa</b>	to be withdrawn
<b>Kutoa</b>	to remove	-> <b>Kutolewa</b>	to be removed

4. When the verb radical ends in the vowel sequence **-UA** :**-A** is replaced by **-LIWA** :

<b>Kuchagua</b>	to choose	-> <b>Kuchaguliwa</b>	to be chosen
<b>Kufungua</b>	to open, to untie	-> <b>Kufunguliwa</b>	to be opened
<b>Kujua</b>	to know	-> <b>Kujuliwa</b>	to be known

5. Verbs of Arabic origin finishing in **-I** and **-U** take the suffix **-IWA** :

<b>Kubadili</b>	to change	-> <b>Kubadiliwa</b>	to be changed
<b>Kujibu</b>	to answer	-> <b>Kujibiwa</b>	to be answered
<b>Kukubali</b>	to agree	-> <b>Kukubaliwa</b>	to be permitted

6. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-AU** take the suffix **-LIWA** :

<b>Kusahau</b>	to forget	-> <b>Kusahauliwa</b>	to be forgotten
----------------	-----------	-----------------------	-----------------

7. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-E** take the suffix **-EWA** :

<b>Kusamehe</b>	to forgive	-> <b>Kusamehewa</b>	to be forgiven
-----------------	------------	----------------------	----------------

8. NOTES :

- Some verbs already possess a passive meaning in their basic form :

<b>Kulewa</b>	to be drunk / tipsy
---------------	---------------------

- Case of the monosyllabic verbs : suffix **-IWA** or **-EWA** :

<b>Kula</b>	to eat	-> <b>Kuliwa</b>	to be eaten
<b>Kunywa</b>	to drink	-> <b>Kunywewa</b>	to be drunk
<b>Kupa</b>	to give	-> <b>Kupewa</b>	to be given

- Particular cases :

<b>Kutaka</b>	to want	-> <b>Kutakiwa</b>	to be wanted
<b>Kuua</b>	to kill	-> <b>Kuuawa</b>	to be killed

**EXAMPLES :**

**Mtoto alipewa zawadi na babaye.**

The child was given a gift by his father.

**Chakula kililiwa na paka.**

The food was eaten by the cat.

**Mbuzi alichinjwa kwa kisu.**

The goat was killed with a knife.

**Niliambiwa kwamba Fatuma ameolewa.**

I was told that Fatuma is married.

**Hamisi alipigwa na mwalimu mkuu.**

Hamisi was beaten by the headmaster.

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Daftari</b>	a register, a copybook	<b>Hotuba</b>	a sermon, a speech
<b>Dini</b>	religion	<b>Idara</b>	a department
<b>Haja</b>	a need	<b>Huduma</b>	a service, a help
<b>Haki</b>	justice, right	<b>Jamhuri</b>	the Republic
<b>Halmashauri</b>	an authority	<b>Kanuni</b>	a rule, a principle
<b>Hekima</b>	wisdom	<b>Kodi</b>	taxes

**Cross Word Puzzle****EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. The robber has been caught.
2. The wages have been paid.
3. The fields are cultivated.
4. The child was born.
5. The luggage has been stolen.
6. The food has been brought.
7. The door has been closed.
8. My sister has married.

9. The bad pupil has been beaten.
10. The goat was sacrificed.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

1. Chakula kimeliwa na watoto.
2. Mzungu amehibiwa na mwizi.
3. Mzigo wake umehibwa jana.
4. Kuku amekamatwa na mbwa.
5. Mtoto huyu anapendwa na watu wote.
6. Mbwa alipigwa na mwenyewe.
7. Nguo hizo zimepewa kwa watu maskini.
8. Chakula kinapikwa na wanafunzi wa shule.
9. Mnyama mmoja amekamatwa katika mtego.
10. Kijana huyu amelewa.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 38 - The Prepositional Form

The prepositional derivation has an attributive, instrumental, or locative value.

It also allows a transitive verb, i.e. a verb which has already got a complement object, to receive a 2<sup>nd</sup> complement or ATTRIBUTE. This attribute will be present as an object infix inside the verb construction, and be possibly doubled by the noun attribute which will be placed between the verb and the noun object in the sentence. Here is an example to illustrate this phenomenon :

**Mama anapika chakula**

Mother is cooking food

**Mama anawapikia watoto chakula**

Mother is cooking food for the children

In English, the noun attribute is introduced by a preposition (though not always), hence the term "PREPOSITIONAL" or "PREPOSITIONAL FORM" retained to describe this type of derivation. Others prefer the term "ATTRIBUTIVE".

The prepositional derivation is characterized by the addition of the suffix **-IA** or **-EA**, (or even **-LIA**, **-LEA**), at the end of the verb radical, to replace the termination **-A**.

### 1. SOME VERBS IN THE PREPOSITIONAL FORM :

#### 1. When the verb radical ends in a consonant + **A** :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A**, **I** or **U**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-IA** :

<b>Kuandika</b>	to write	-> <b>Kuandikia</b>	to write to / for
<b>Kuacha</b>	to leave	-> <b>Kuachia</b>	to leave to / for
<b>Kufanya</b>	to make, to do	-> <b>Kufanyia</b>	to make for
<b>Kupata</b>	to get, to obtain	-> <b>Kupatia</b>	to obtain for
<b>Kupita</b>	to pass	-> <b>Kupitia</b>	to go past
<b>Kutupa</b>	to throw	-> <b>Kutupia</b>	to throw to

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-EA** :

<b>Kuleta</b>	to bring	-> <b>Kuletea</b>	to bring to / for
<b>Kusoma</b>	to read	-> <b>Kusomea</b>	to read for

#### 2. When the verb radical ends in a sequence of two vowels :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A**, **I** or **U**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-LIA** :



<b>Kuzaa</b>	to give birth	-> <b>Kuzalia</b>	to bear someone a child
<b>Kufagia</b>	to sweep	-> <b>Kufagilia</b>	to sweep for
<b>Kukimbia</b>	to run	-> <b>Kukimbilia</b>	to run towards / after
<b>Kuchagua</b>	to choose	-> <b>Kuchagulia</b>	to choose for
<b>Kuchukua</b>	to take	-> <b>Kuchukulia</b>	to take for

3. (b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-LEA** :

<b>Kulea</b>	to bring up	-> <b>Kulelea</b>	to bring up for
<b>Kupokea</b>	to receive	-> <b>Kupokelea</b>	to receive for
<b>Kuondoa</b>	to withdraw	-> <b>Kuondolea</b>	to withdraw for / to

4. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-E**, **-I** and **-U** take the suffix **-IA** :

<b>Kujibu</b>	to answer	-> <b>Kujibia</b>	to answer to / for
<b>Kurudi</b>	to return	-> <b>Kurudia</b>	to return to
<b>Kusalimu</b>	to greet	-> <b>Kusalimia</b>	to give regards to
<b>Kusamehe</b>	to forgive	-> <b>Kusamehea</b>	to forgive to

5. Verbs of Arabic origin ending in **-AU**, take the suffix **-LIA** :

<b>Kudharau</b>	to scorn	-> <b>Kudharaulia</b>	to have contempt for
<b>Kusahau</b>	to forget	-> <b>Kusahaulia</b>	to forget to

6. NOTES :

- Some verbs already possess a prepositional meaning in their basic form :

<b>Kuambia</b>	to tell (to)
<b>Kuingia</b>	to enter
<b>Kupa</b>	to give (to)
<b>Kuuliza</b>	to ask (to)

- Monosyllabic verbs take the suffix **-IA** or **-EA**. Therefore they become disyllabic verbs and lose the **KU** of the infinitive when conjugated :

<b>Kula</b>	to eat	-> <b>Kulia</b>	(smth) to eat
<b>Kunywa</b>	to drink	-> <b>Kunywea</b>	(smth) to drink

- Some verbs acquire a new meaning in their prepositional form :

<b>Kuamka</b>	to wake up	-> <b>Kuamkia</b>	to greet
<b>Kufika</b>	to arrive	-> <b>Kufikia</b>	to reach

<b>Kuhama</b>	to emigrate	-> <b>Kuhamia</b>	to move in, to immigrate
<b>Kunuka</b>	to smell bad	-> <b>Kunukia</b>	to smell good
<b>Kutenda</b>	to treat badly	-> <b>Kutendea</b>	to treat well
<b>Kutuma</b>	to send, to employ	-> <b>Kutumia</b>	to use

- A number of nouns of Arabic origin can be made into verbs with the addition of a prepositional suffix :

<b>Faida</b>	profit	-> <b>Kufaidia</b>	to benefit
<b>Huruma</b>	pity	-> <b>Kuhurumia</b>	to have pity of
<b>Huzuni</b>	sorrow	-> <b>Kuhuzunia</b>	to feel sorrow for
<b>Sherehe</b>	feast, celebration	-> <b>Kusherekea</b>	to celebrate

## 2. PARTICULAR USES OF THE PREPOSITIONAL FORM :

1. The prepositional form used in conjunction with **MBALI** (= far) carries the idea of utter separation :

### EXAMPLES :

<b>Tupia mbali makopo haya mabaya !</b>	Throw away these bad preserves !
<b>Yaachilie mbali mawazo haya !</b>	Give up these ideas !
<b>Tulikatie mbali tawi hili !</b>	Let's cut off this branch !
<b>Ziondolee mbali nguo hizi !</b>	Get rid of these clothes !

2. An infinitive verb in the prepositional form, introduced by the connective **-A**, indicates the purpose or destination of something (instrumental value) :

### EXAMPLES :

<b>Kisu cha kukatia nyama</b>	A knife for cutting meat
<b>Fedha za kununulia nguo</b>	Money to buy clothes
<b>Chumba cha kulia</b>	The dining room
<b>Maji ya kuogea</b>	Water for the bath

## 3. DOUBLE DERIVATION :

Prepositional derivation + Passive derivation :

- 1.

Basic form :Prepositional form :Passive form :Prep + Pass form :**Alisoma kitabu****Alin**isomea** kitabu****Kitabu kilisom**wa** naye****Mimi nilisom**ewa** kitabu**

He read the book

He read me the book

The book was read by him

I was read the book

2.

Basic form :Prepositional form :Passive form :Prep + Pass :**Nimenunua sukari****Nimewanunul**ia** sukari****Sukari imenunul**iwa******Wamenunul**iwa** sukari**

I have bought sugar

I have bought them sugar

The sugar has been bought

They have been bought sugar

3.

Basic form :Prepositional form :Passive form :Prep + Pass form :**Mwizi ameiba mkoba****Mwizi ameib**ia** mzungu mkoba wake****Mkoba umeib**wa******Mzungu ameib**iwa** mkoba wake**

The thief has stolen the bag

The thief has stolen the white man his bag

The bag has been stolen

The white man has been stolen his bag

**4. SOME EXAMPLES :****Andika barua !****Mwandikie barua !****Mwandikie mamako barua !****Fungua mlango !****Wafungulie mlango !****Wafungulie wageni mlango !****Anasoma kitabu.****Ana**msomea** mwenzie kitabu.****Niambie !****Mwambie !****Mwambie babako !****Watoto walit**u**imb**ia** nyimbo.****Mama alit**u**pik**ia** chakula.****Ninunulie unga wa kupik**ia** mkate !**

Write a letter !

Write him / her a letter !Write your mother a letter !

Open the door !

Open the door for them !Open the door for the guests !

He reads a book

He reads a book to his friend.Tell me !Tell him / her !Tell *(it)* to your father !The children sang us songs.Mother cooked us some food.Buy me flour to bake bread !



## Chakubanga

- Mume yangu Chakubanga ! Leo nimekupikia chakula bora, ukwaju na mapapai kwa mtindo wa kisasa.
- Kaongeze ndimu na malimau redio imesema !

- Chakubanga my husband ! today I've cooked for you new cuisine : tamarind and papaya of the day.

- Add some lemons and limes, they said in the radio !

## VOCABULARY

Ku-cheka	to laugh
Ku-dharau	to scorn
Ku-jenga	to build
Ku-kasirika	to get angry
Ku-oga	to bath / bathe
Ku-piga makofi	to applaud

Ku-piga picha	to photograph
Ku-tengeneza	to repair
Ku-tia sahihi	to sign
Ku-tumaini	to hope
Ku-vuta	to draw
Ku-zunguka	to go round in circle

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Put the verbs in the prepositional form :

Kununua, kupika, kufungua, kukata, kulia, kutafuta, kutaka, kuona, kuruka, kutengeneza, kusalimu, kuimbia, kutia, kukimbia, kula, kujenga, kuhama, kupata, kushona, kuita, kudharau, kupiga picha, kuzuia, kucheka, kuoga.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Mama anawasomea watoto hadisi nzuri.
2. Nikupikie chakula ?
3. Unakitakia nini kisu hiki ?
4. Natafuta kisu cha kuchinjia mbuzi.
5. Nisalimie Baba na Mama na ndugu zangu.
6. Ndege alirukia upesi juu ya mti.
7. Fatuma amemrudia mme wake.
8. Kamba hizi kama ni za kujengea, hazitafaa.
9. Atatuharibia furaha yetu na huzuni yake.
10. Bidii yako itakufaidia siku moja.
11. Vibarua wamemlimia shamba lake.
12. Lete kamba ya kufungia mbwa.
13. Uninunulie mkate na maziwa.
14. Mtoto mdogo alimkimbilia mama wake.
15. Hamisi alimwendea daktari.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 39 - The Causative Form

This form corresponds to the English : "make someone do something". For example : make someone work, make someone build, make someone understand (explain), make someone learn (teach), make someone eat (feed), etc.

The causative derivation is characterized by the addition of the suffix : **-ISHA, -ESHA, -LISHA, -LIZA, -IZA, -EZA, -ZA** or **-SHA** at the end of the verb, replacing the termination **-A**.

### 1. SOME VERBS IN THE CAUSATIVE FORM :

#### 1. When the radical ends in a consonant + **A** :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A, I** or **U**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-ISHA** or **-IZA** :

<b>Kufanya</b>	to make, to do	-> <b>Kufanyiza</b>	to make do
<b>Kufika</b>	to arrive	-> <b>Kufikisha</b>	to make reach
<b>Kuhamia</b>	to move out	-> <b>Kuhamisha</b>	to make move out
<b>Kula</b>	to eat	-> <b>Kulisha</b>	to feed
<b>Kusimama</b>	to stop, to stand	-> <b>Kusimamisha</b>	to make stop
<b>Kupita</b>	to pass	-> <b>Kupitisha</b>	to make pass
<b>Kuuma</b>	to hurt (oneself)	-> <b>Kuumiza</b>	to hurt (someone)

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-ESHA** or **-EZA** :

<b>Kucheka</b>	to laugh	-> <b>Kuchekesha</b>	to make laugh
<b>Kuenda</b>	to go	-> <b>Kuendesha</b>	to drive
<b>Kukopa</b>	to borrow	-> <b>Kukopesha</b>	to lend
<b>Kuoza</b>	to rot	-> <b>Kuozesha</b>	to make rot, to ferment
<b>Kupenda</b>	to love, to like	-> <b>Kupendeza</b>	to please
<b>Kuweza</b>	to be able	-> <b>Kuwezesha</b>	to allow

#### 2. When the verb radical ends in a sequence of two vowels, the final **-A** is replaced by the suffix **-ZA, -LISHA** or **-LIZA**:

<b>Kuelea</b>	to be clear	-> <b>Kueleza</b>	to explain
<b>Kuingia</b>	to enter	-> <b>Kuingiza</b>	to introduce, to let in
<b>Kujaa</b>	to be filled	-> <b>Kujaza</b>	to fill
<b>Kupotea</b>	to get lost	-> <b>Kupoteza</b>	to lose

<b>Kupungua</b>	to be decreased	-> <b>Kupunguza</b>	to decrease, to lower
<b>Kusikia</b>	to hear	-> <b>Kusikiliza</b>	to listen
<b>Kutembea</b>	to walk	-> <b>Kutembeza</b>	to take for a walk
<b>Kuvaa</b>	to wear	-> <b>Kuvalisha</b>	to dress

3. Verbs of Arabic origin take the suffix **-ISHA** :

<b>Kurudi</b>	to come back	-> <b>Kurudisha</b>	to give back
<b>Kufurahi</b>	to be delighted	-> <b>Kufurahisha</b>	to delight
<b>Kufahamu</b>	to know	-> <b>Kufahamisha</b>	to inform, to let know
<b>Kukaribu</b>	to be welcome	-> <b>Kukaribisha</b>	to welcome someone

4. Some verbs ending in **-KA** or **-TA** change their termination into **-SHA** :

<b>Kuamka</b>	to wake up	-> <b>Kuamsha</b>	to wake someone up
<b>Kuanguka</b>	to fall	-> <b>Kuangusha</b>	to make fall, to drop
<b>Kuchemka</b>	to boil	-> <b>Kuchemsha</b>	to make boil
<b>Kuchoka</b>	to be tired	-> <b>Kuchokesha</b>	to tire someone
<b>Kupata</b>	to get, to obtain	-> <b>Kupasha</b>	to make obtain
<b>Kuwaka</b>	to burn	-> <b>Kuwasha</b>	to light fire

5. Some verbs ending in **-NA** change their termination into **-NYA** :

<b>Kuona</b>	to see	-> <b>Kuonya</b>	to warn
<b>Kupona</b>	to get cured	-> <b>Kuponya</b>	to cure someone

6. NOTES :

- One case of double causative derivation :

<b>Kuona</b>	to see	-> <b>Kuonya</b>	to warn	-> <b>Kuonyesha</b>	to show
--------------	--------	------------------	---------	---------------------	---------

- Some verbs possess a causative meaning in their basic form :

<b>Kufundisha</b>	to teach
<b>Kupasha moto</b>	to heat

- Some nouns and adjectives of Arabic origin can be made into verbs with the addition of a causative suffix :

<b>Bahati</b>	luck	-> <b>Kubahatisha</b>	to try one's luck
<b>Hakika</b>	a certainty	-> <b>Kuhakikisha</b>	to make sure
<b>Laini</b>	soft, smooth	-> <b>Kulainisha</b>	to soften
<b>Safi</b>	clean	-> <b>Kusafisha</b>	to clean

Sawa equal  
Tayari ready

-> Kusawazisha to put in order  
-> Kutayarisha to prepare

## 2. SOME EXAMPLES :

Pasha moto chakula hiki !  
Mama amelisha mtoto wake  
Jifundishe (jifunze) kiswahili !  
Usinimumize !  
Punguza bei tafadhali !  
Habari zako zinanifurahisha sana  
Tuwakaribishe wageni wetu !  
Nifahamishe kama u tayari !  
Dawa hili litakuponya haraka  
Nionyeshe njia !

Heat this food !  
The mother has fed her child  
Learn Swahili !  
Don't hurt me !  
Lower the price, please !  
Your news rejoice me a lot  
Let's welcome our guests !  
Let me know when you're ready !  
This medicine will cure you quickly  
Show me the way !



### Chakubanga

- Hukusikia kwenye radio kamba nauli ya UDA imeongezeka ? Wacha kupoteza muda ongeza hela !!
- Bwana-Ndugu kondakita hiyo radio haikusema ni lini huu mshahara wetu utaongezwa ?
- You didn't hear on the radio that the bus's fare has increased ? Stop wasting my time, increase the money !!
- Sir, brother conductor, this radio didn't say when our salary will be increased ?

## VOCABULARY

Adabu good manners

Dhambi sin



<b>Baraka</b>	a blessing
<b>Bidii</b>	effort
<b>Chuki</b>	bad mood
<b>Desturi</b>	a custom
<b>Dharau</b>	contempt

<b>Hofu</b>	fear
<b>Huruma</b>	pity
<b>Imani</b>	faith
<b>Sifa</b>	fame
<b>Siri</b>	a secret

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. Lower the price ! Stop the car here ! Fill this basket ! Let the cat in ! Take the children for a walk ! Drive me to town ! Light the fire ! Wake up the children ! Give back the books ! Warn your father ! Prepare your luggage ! Clean the bedroom ! Don't make me laugh ! Don't hurt me ! Pass the plate !
- b. I teach French, the doctor cured the patient, the mother woke the children up, she lit the fire, she boiled the water, she prepared the food, my sister cleaned the dining room, my father fed the animals, I lent him money, the pupil lost his books.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Nieleze msomo huu.
2. Rudisha vitabu vyako kesho.
3. Nimepoteza mwavuli wangu.
4. Nenda kulisha wanyama wale.
5. Punguza bei kidogo. Bei ya mwisho ngapi ?
6. Fungua masikio yako na sikiliza kwa makini !
7. Hakikisha kwamba mtu asijue siri yako.
8. Daktari aliponya mtoto mgonjwa.
9. Nakuomba unikopeshe fedha kidogo.
10. Nitakurudisha hizo mwisho wa mwezi.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 40 - The Reciprocal Form

This form represents a reciprocal or mutual action, and sometimes a collective action.

In English reciprocity is marked by expressions such as "each other" or "one another" after the verb.

For example :	to fight <u>each other</u>	We fight <u>each other</u> .
	to help <u>each other</u>	Let's help <u>each other</u> !
	to follow <u>each other</u>	They follow <u>each other</u> .

We obtain the same in Swahili by replacing the final vowel **-A** of the verb with the suffix : **-ANA**.

### 1. SOME VERBS IN THE RECIPROCAL FORM :

<b>Ku-acha</b>	to leave	-> <b>Ku-achana</b>	to leave each other
<b>Ku-ambia</b>	to tell	-> <b>Ku-ambiana</b>	to tell each other
<b>Ku-amkia</b>	to greet	-> <b>Ku-amkiana</b>	to greet each other
<b>Ku-andama</b>	to accompany	-> <b>Ku-andamana</b>	to follow in order
<b>Ku-andika</b>	to write	-> <b>Ku-andikiana</b>	to write each other
<b>Ku-faa</b>	to fit	-> <b>Ku-fanana</b>	to look the same
<b>Ku-fuata</b>	to follow	-> <b>Ku-fuatana</b>	to follow each other
<b>Ku-gomba</b>	to quarrel	-> <b>Ku-gombana</b>	to quarrel with one another
<b>Ku-jua</b>	to know	-> <b>Ku-juana</b>	to know each other
<b>Ku-kosa</b>	to miss	-> <b>Ku-kosana</b>	to quarrel
<b>Ku-kuta</b>	to meet	-> <b>Ku-kutana</b>	to meet one another
<b>Ku-ngoja</b>	to wait	-> <b>Ku-ngojana</b>	to wait for one another
<b>Ku-oa</b>	to marry someone	-> <b>Ku-oana</b>	to get married (together)
<b>Ku-pata</b>	to get	-> <b>Ku-patana</b>	to agree
<b>Ku-penda</b>	to love	-> <b>Ku-pendana</b>	to love each other
<b>Ku-piga</b>	to fight, to hit	-> <b>Ku-pigana</b>	to fight each other
<b>Ku-saidia</b>	to help	-> <b>Ku-saidiana</b>	to help each other
<b>Ku-shinda</b>	to overcome	-> <b>Ku-shindana</b>	to compete
<b>Ku-sukuma</b>	to push	-> <b>Ku-sukumana</b>	to push each other
<b>Ku-ua</b>	to kill	-> <b>Ku-uana</b>	to kill one another

Verbs of Arabic origin must first take the prepositional form to accommodate the suffix **-ANA** :

<b>Ku-jibu</b>	to answer	-> <b>Ku-jibiana</b>	to answer each other
<b>Ku-rudi</b>	to come back	-> <b>Ku-rudiana</b>	to return to each other
<b>Ku-salimu</b>	to greet	-> <b>Ku-salimiana</b>	to greet each other
<b>Ku-samehe</b>	to forgive	-> <b>Ku-sameheana</b>	to forgive each other
<b>Ku-shiriki</b>	to share	-> <b>Ku-shirikiana</b>	to cooperate

## 2. A FEW EXAMPLES :

After a reciprocal verb, "with" is translated by **NA** :

**Fuatana na ndugu yako.**

Accompany your brother.

**Sipatani na mtu huyo.**

I don't get along with that person.

**Nilijuana naye zamani sana.**

I knew him / her a long time ago.

**Njiani nilikutana na watu wawili.**

I met with two people on my way.



Shamasha

- .. **We Punda kwanini usalimii WAKUBWA !**
- .. **Sikujua kama binadamu wana utamaduni wa KUSALIMIANA !**
- .. Eh you, Donkey, why don't you greet your **ELDERS !**
- .. I didn't know that human beings used to **GREET EACH OTHER !**

## VOCABULARY

<b>Bara (ma-)</b>	a continent	<b>Jaribio (ma-)</b>	an experiment
<b>Deni (ma-)</b>	a debt	<b>Jeraha (ma-)</b>	a wound
<b>Dobi (ma-)</b>	a launderer	<b>Jipu (ma-)</b>	an abscess
<b>Eneo (ma-)</b>	an area	<b>Kabila (ma-)</b>	a tribe
<b>Figo (ma-)</b>	a kidney	<b>Pigo (ma-)</b>	a blow
<b>Ini (ma-)</b>	the liver	<b>Sharti (ma-)</b>	an obligation

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

1. Tell them to wait for each other.
2. Prevent these children from fighting.
3. See you tomorrow.
4. These animals are following each other into the forest.
5. We shall wait for each other at five in the evening.
6. These people don't like each other.
7. We shall compete with you in this game.
8. They want to get along.
9. We must prevent these people from killing each other.
10. I met him on the way.
11. We saw each other in town.
12. We left each other at one o'clock.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Nilionana naye jana.
2. Watoto wanapigana uani.
3. Tumeambiana habari zote.
4. Wamepatana nasi.
5. Simba watatu walifuatana porini.
6. Wanachama wanakutana chamani.
7. Sisi na wenzetu tunashirikiana.
8. Hatukuweza kukubaliana hata kidogo.
9. Mwizi alipigana na mwenyewe wa duka.
10. Siku zafuatana.
11. Sijuani nao vyema.
12. Hapana kugombana wala kusukumana.



## Chapter 41 - The Stative Form

At least to a Western mind, a verb in the stative form is rather similar in meaning to a verb in the passive form, except that it doesn't tell by who or what the action was made. It invariably implies a latent or resulting state, wherefrom the name of STATIVE, or STATIVE FORM, given to that derivation.

From a grammatical point of view, another effect of the stative derivation is to make a transitive verb become intransitive.

### EXAMPLES :

<u>Passive</u>	<b>Dirisha limevunjwa na mtoto huyu.</b>	The window has been broken by this child.
<u>Stative</u>	<b>Dirisha limevunjika.</b>	The window is broken.
<u>Passive</u>	<b>Nguo zimeharibwa na mvua.</b>	The clothes have been ruined by the rain.
<u>Stative</u>	<b>Nguo zimeharibika.</b>	The clothes are ruined.

Some verbs already possess a stative meaning in their basic form, while other verbs are derived using the suffix **-KA** to produce the stative form.

### 1. SOME VERBS IN THE STATIVE FORM :

#### 1. When the radical ends in a consonant :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **A, I** or **U**, the final vowel of the verb is replaced by the suffix **-IKA**

<b>Ku-badili</b>	to change	-> <b>Ku-badilika</b>	to be changed
<b>Ku-funga</b>	to close	-> <b>Ku-fungika</b>	to be closed
<b>Ku-haribu</b>	to destroy	-> <b>Ku-haribika</b>	to be destroyed
<b>Ku-jibu</b>	to answer	-> <b>Ku-jibika</b>	to be answered
<b>Ku-kamili</b>	to finish	-> <b>Ku-kamilika</b>	to be completed, achieved
<b>Ku-kata</b>	to cut	-> <b>Ku-katika</b>	to be cut
<b>Ku-kubali</b>	to agree	-> <b>Ku-kubalika</b>	to agree together
<b>Ku-mwaga</b>	to pour	-> <b>Ku-mwagika</b>	to be poured

<b>Ku-shutumu</b>	to insult	-> <b>Ku-shutumika</b>	to be insulted
<b>Ku-vunja</b>	to break	-> <b>Ku-vunjika</b>	to be broken

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **E** or **O**, the final vowel of the verb is replaced by the suffix **-EKA**

<b>Ku-choma</b>	to burn	-> <b>Ku-chomeka</b>	to be burned
<b>Ku-samehe</b>	to forgive	-> <b>Ku-sameheka</b>	to be forgiven
<b>Ku-tosha</b>	to be enough	-> <b>Ku-tosheka</b>	to be sufficient

2. When the verb radical ends in a vowel :

(a) If the vowel of the radical is **-A**, **-I** or **-U**, the final **-A** is replaced by **-KA** or **-LIKA**

<b>Ku-fungua</b>	to open	-> <b>Ku-funguka</b>	to open, to be opened
<b>Ku-geua</b>	to change	-> <b>Ku-geuka</b>	to be changed
<b>Ku-pasua</b>	to split, to saw	-> <b>Ku-pasuka</b>	to be split, to be sawn
<b>Ku-pindua</b>	to turn over	-> <b>Ku-pinduka</b>	to be overturned
<b>Ku-sikia</b>	to hear	-> <b>Ku-sikika</b> -> <b>Ku-sikilika</b>	to be heard

(b) If the vowel of the radical is **-E** or **-O**, the final **-A** is replaced by **-KA** or **-LEKA** :

<b>Ku-ng'oa</b>	to uproot	-> <b>Ku-ng'oka</b> -> <b>Kung'oleka</b>	to be uprooted
-----------------	-----------	---	----------------

(c) When the verb ends in **-AU**, the suffix **-LIKA** is added at the end of the verb :

<b>Ku-sahau</b>	to forget	-> <b>Ku-sahaulika</b>	to be forgotten
-----------------	-----------	------------------------	-----------------

3. Verbs in the causative form ending in **-SHA** or **-ZA** take the suffix **-IKA** or **-EKA** :

<b>Ku-pendeza</b>	to like	-> <b>Ku-pendezeka</b>	to be pleasant
<b>Ku-pumuza</b>	to make breath	-> <b>Ku-pumzika</b>	to rest

4. A number of verbs can be derived from nouns, adverbs or adjectives :

<b>Hasira</b>	anger	<b>-&gt; Ku-kasirika</b>	to be in anger
<b>Imara</b>	firm	<b>-&gt; Ku-imarika</b>	to be firm
<b>Shughuli</b>	business	<b>-&gt; Ku-shughulika</b>	to be busy

NOTES :

1. Some verbs with a stative meaning are not derived from any basic root. They do not necessarily end in the suffix **-KA** :

<b>Ku-chelewa</b>	to be late
<b>Ku-choka</b>	to be tired
<b>Ku-jaa</b>	to be filled
<b>Ku-lewa</b>	to be drunk
<b>Ku-potea</b>	to lose oneself
<b>Ku-shiba</b>	to be satiated
<b>Kwisha</b>	to be finished

2. Some verbs take a particular meaning in the stative form :

<b>Ku-nusa</b>	to smell out	<b>-&gt; Ku-nuka</b>	to smell bad
		<b>-&gt; Ku-nukia</b>	to smell good

3. Some other verbs ending in **-KA** have an active meaning. Thus :

<b>Ku-amka</b>	to wake up
<b>Ku-andika</b>	to write
<b>Ku-anika</b>	to spread in the sun
<b>Ku-bandika</b>	to stick
<b>Ku-funika</b>	to put a lid
<b>Ku-pika</b>	to cook
<b>Ku-sikitika</b>	to have pity

**2. STATIVE VERBS EXPRESSING POTENTIALITY :**

1. Many verbs already referred to above can express a potentiality. Thus :

<b>Ku-badilika</b>	to be changeable
<b>Ku-chomeka</b>	able to burn

<b>Ku-fungika</b>	able to be closed
<b>Ku-funguka</b>	able to be opened
<b>Ku-jibika</b>	to be answerable
<b>Ku-kubalika</b>	able to agree
<b>Ku-lika</b>	to be edible
<b>Ku-nyweka</b>	to be drinkable

2. Other verbs expressing a potentiality take the additional suffix **-NA** :

<b>Ku-julikana</b>	to be known
<b>Ku-onekana</b>	to be visible
<b>Ku-patikana</b>	to be obtained
<b>Ku-wezekana</b>	to be possible

### 3. USE OF THE STATIVE FORM :

- Verbs in the stative form are often used in the Past Perfect (tense marker **-ME-**) :

<b>Gari langu limeharibika.</b>	My car has a breakdown.
<b>Kikombe kimevunjika.</b>	The cup is broken.
<b>Nimechoka kabisa.</b>	I am very tired.

- Verbs expressing a potentiality are often used in the Present Definite (tense marker **-NA-**) :

<b>Mlima wa Kilimanjaro unaonekana leo.</b>	Mount Kilimanjaro is visible today.
<b>Unga unapatikana madukani.</b>	Flour is available in the shops.
<b>Mambo hayo yanawezekana.</b>	These things are possible.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Buni</b>	coffee beans	<b>Karanga</b>	peanuts
<b>Chaki</b>	chalk	<b>Karata</b>	playing cards
<b>Chemchemi</b>	a source	<b>Kokwa</b>	a nut
<b>Chokaa</b>	lime	<b>Kutu</b>	rust



**Dengu**

lentils

**Mbaazi**

peas

**Katani**

sisal

**Pikipiki**

a motorbike

Cross Word Puzzle

**EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1** : Translate into Swahili :

1. The bread is burnt.
2. The door is ruined.
3. The ditch is filled.
4. The master got angry.
5. This pipe is broken.
6. These hunters are very well known.
7. If the exam is finished, rest a little.
8. The children are sleeping because they are tired.
9. Yesterday, Juma was completely drunk.
10. Don't sit on this chair, it is broken.
11. The mountain is quite visible now.
12. He didn't succeed in closing the door because it closes badly.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

1. Kazi hii yafanyika.
2. Kazi hii haifanyiki.
3. Machungwa haya hayaliki, bado kuiva.
4. Koti langu limepasuka.
5. Kama umeshughulika, nitarudi kesho.
6. Taa imezimika.
7. Sikuvunja kikombe hiki, kimevunjika tu.
8. Sukari hainunuliki leo.
9. Dirisha hili halifunguki.
10. Uzi wangu umekatika.
11. Leo ndizi hazipatikani sokoni.
12. Jambo hili haliwezekani.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 42 - The Reversive Form

The relative derivation concerns only a small number of verbs, for which there is a "reverse" action.

In English, the "reversive" verb is usually formed by placing a prefix such as "un-" or "dis-" in front of the verb radical.

<b>EXAMPLES</b>	to tie	-> to <u>untie</u>
:	to do	-> to <u>undo</u>
	to close	-> to <u>disclose</u>

In Swahili, the reversive derivation consists in replacing the termination **-A** of the verb by the suffix **-UA** (or **-OA**, when the vowel of the radical is **O**).

### 1. SOME VERBS IN THE REVERSIVE FORM :

<b>Ku-bandika</b>	to stick	<b>Ku-banduka</b>	to unstick
<b>Ku-cha</b>	to rise (sun)	<b>Ku-chwa</b>	to set (sun)
<b>Ku-choma</b>	to prick, to bore	<b>Ku-chomoa</b>	to extract
<b>Ku-fuma</b>	to bread, to tie	<b>Ku-fumua</b>	to fray, to untie
<b>Ku-fumba</b>	to lock up	<b>Ku-fumbua</b>	to open
<b>Ku-funga</b>	to bind, to fast	<b>Ku-fungua</b>	to untie, to break the fast
<b>Ku-funika</b>	to cover	<b>Ku-funua</b>	to uncover
<b>Ku-inama</b>	to bend	<b>Ku-inua</b>	to raise
<b>Ku-kunja</b>	to fold	<b>Ku-kunjua</b>	to unfold
<b>Ku-paka</b>	to load	<b>Ku-pakua</b>	to unload
<b>Ku-tata</b>	to muddle	<b>Ku-tatua</b>	to disentangle
<b>Ku-tega</b>	to trap	<b>Ku-tegua</b>	to deliver from a trap
<b>Ku-vaa</b>	to wear	<b>Ku-vua</b>	to undress
<b>Ku-ziba</b>	to plug, to cork	<b>Ku-zibua</b>	to unplug, to uncork

### VOCABULARY

**Madaraka**

responsibilities

**Marufuku**

a prohibition

<b>Maelezo</b>	an explanation	<b>Mashindano</b>	a competition
<b>Magendo</b>	smuggling	<b>Matandiko</b>	bed linen
<b>Magugu</b>	weeds	<b>Matata</b>	problems
<b>Makuti</b>	palms	<b>Matokeo</b>	results
<b>Manyonya</b>	feathers	<b>Mavuno</b>	a harvest

Cross Word Puzzle

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

Stick the stamp ! Put on the clothes ! Uncork the bottle ! Remove the thorn ! Uncover the pan ! unload the luggage ! Shut (your) eyes ! Open (your) hand ! Remove the hat ! Trap !

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mwambie mpishi apakue chakula !
2. Ziba chupa hii !
3. Kumekucha.
4. Jua limekuchwa.
5. Mtoto anakunja uso.
6. Waislamu wafunga mwezi wa Ramadhani.
7. Ndege anafunua mabawa yake.
8. Jua limefunika na mawingu.
9. Bandika stempu katika barua yako kabla ya kuipeleka.
10. Kidole changu kinachoma.
11. Nimechomoa rafiki yangu shilingi mia.
12. Mkia wa nyani haumbanduki nyani.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 43 - The Formation of Nouns

You have probably now noticed that many nouns and verbs come from the same roots. For memory, let's give here some words we have already met with :

<b>ku-sikia</b>	to hear	-> <b>sikio</b>	an ear
<b>ku-imba</b>	to sing	-> <b>wimbo</b>	a song
<b>ku-safiri</b>	to travel	-> <b>safari</b>	a journey

We will review in this chapter the various devices most commonly used in Swahili to coin new nouns, and the significance of some of the prefixes and suffixes used in that process.

### 1. NOUNS DERIVED FROM A VERB :

#### 1. Noun ending in -i :

1. To obtain a noun of trade or occupation, we place a classes 1/2 prefix (**M-/WA-** gender) in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-i** :

<b>ku-gomba</b>	to contradict	-> <b>mgomvi (wa-)</b>	a quarrellous person
<b>ku-lea</b>	to raise	-> <b>mlezi (wa-)</b>	a children's nurse
<b>ku-lewa</b>	to be drunk	-> <b>mlevi (wa-)</b>	a drunkard
<b>ku-linda</b>	to guard	-> <b>mlinzi (wa-)</b>	a guard
<b>ku-nunua</b>	to buy	-> <b>mnunuzi (wa-)</b>	a buyer, a customer
<b>ku-pika</b>	to cook	-> <b>mpishi (wa-)</b>	a cook
<b>ku-shona</b>	to sew	-> <b>mshoni (wa-)</b>	a tailor
<b>ku-tumika</b>	to be employed	-> <b>mtumishi (wa-)</b>	a servant
<b>ku-vua</b>	to fish	-> <b>mvuvi (wa-)</b>	a fisherman
<b>ku-zaa</b>	to father	-> <b>mzazi (wa-)</b>	a parent

2. We can also place a classes 7/8 prefix (**KI-/VI-** gender) in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-i** :

<b>ku-nyoa</b>	to shave	-> <b>kinyozi (vi-)</b>	a barber
<b>ku-ongoza</b>	to lead	-> <b>kiongozi (vi-)</b>	a leader

3. We can also place a classes 1/2 prefix (**M-/WA-** gender) in front of the verbal root and add the suffix **-ji** at the

end of the radical :

<b>ku-cheza</b>	to play	-> <b>mchezaji (wa-)</b>	a player
<b>ku-chinja</b>	to slaughter	-> <b>mchinjaji (wa-)</b>	a butcher
<b>ku-chunga</b>	to keep	-> <b>mchungaji (wa-)</b>	a shepherd
<b>ku-imba</b>	to sing	-> <b>mwimbaji (wa-)</b>	a singer
<b>ku-lima</b>	to cultivate	-> <b>mlimaji (wa-)</b>	a farmer
<b>ku-sema</b>	to speak	-> <b>msemaji (wa-)</b>	a speaker
<b>ku-tazama</b>	to watch	-> <b>mtazamaji (wa-)</b>	a spectator
<b>ku-uza</b>	to sell	-> <b>mwuzaji (wa-)</b>	a seller

## 2. Noun ending in -U :

1. We obtain abstract nouns by placing a class 14 prefix (**U-** gender) in front of the verbal root. The final vowel **-a** changes into **-u** :

<b>ku-haribu</b>	to destroy	-> <b>uharibifu</b>	destruction
<b>ku-kosa</b>	to miss	-> <b>ukosefu</b>	lack, shortage
<b>ku-okoa</b>	to save	-> <b>wokovu</b>	salvation
<b>ku-punguka</b>	to be reduced	-> <b>upungufu</b>	rarefaction
<b>ku-sahau</b>	to forget	-> <b>usahaulifu</b>	forgetfulness
<b>ku-tulia</b>	to be calm	-> <b>utulivu</b>	calm, peacefulness

2. We also obtain nouns of people by placing a classes 1/2 prefix (**M-/WA-** gender) in front of the verbal root. The final vowel **-a** changes into **-u** :

<b>ku-amini</b>	to believe	-> <b>mwaminifu (wa-)</b>	a believer, a faithful person
<b>ku-anga</b>	to light	-> <b>mwangavu (wa-)</b>	an intelligent person
<b>ku-tukuka</b>	to be estimated	-> <b>mtukufu (wa-)</b>	an estimable person
<b>ku-tulia</b>	to be calm	-> <b>mtulivu (wa-)</b>	a quiet person

## 3. Noun ending in -E :

The termination **-e** often indicates a person or a thing that has undergone an unspecified action. We place a class prefix in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-e** :

<b>ku-kata</b>	to cut	-> <b>mkate (mi-)</b>	a loaf of bread
<b>ku-shinda</b>	to conquer	-> <b>ushinde</b>	a defeat
<b>ku-tuma</b>	to employ	-> <b>mtume (wa-)</b>	a messenger, an envoy

<b>ku-umba</b>	to create	-> <b>kiumbe (vi-)</b>	a creature
----------------	-----------	------------------------	------------

#### 4. Noun ending in -O :

The termination **-o** is quite common. It often indicates an object or an unspecified action. We place a class prefix in front of the verbal root and change the final vowel **-a** into **-o** :

<b>ku-azimu</b>	to propose	-> <b>azimio (ma-)</b>	a declaration
<b>ku-fungua</b>	to open	-> <b>ufunguo (funguo)</b>	a key
<b>ku-funika</b>	to cover	-> <b>kifuniko (vi-)</b>	a lid
<b>ku-ita</b>	to call	-> <b>mwito (mi-)</b>	a call
<b>ku-patana</b>	to agree	-> <b>mpatano (mi-)</b>	an agreement
<b>ku-sikia</b>	to hear	-> <b>sikio (ma-)</b>	an ear
<b>ku-sema</b>	to say	-> <b>msemo (mi-)</b>	a saying
<b>ku-soma</b>	to read, to learn	-> <b>msomo (mi-)</b>	a lesson
<b>ku-tega</b>	to catch	-> <b>mtego (mi-)</b>	a trap
<b>ku-ziba</b>	to stop, to cork	-> <b>kizibo (vi-)</b>	a stopper, a cork

#### 5. Nouns starting with the prefix N- :

Some classes 9/10 nouns (**N-** gender) are simply derived from a verb with the addition of the prefix **N-** :

<b>ku-imba</b>	to sing	-> <b>nyimbo</b>	a song
<b>ku-ja</b>	to come	-> <b>njia</b>	a way
<b>ku-oa</b>	to marry	-> <b>ndoa</b>	a marriage
<b>ku-ota</b>	to dream	-> <b>ndoto</b>	a dream

#### 6. Derivation from a verb of Arabic origin :

Nouns formed from a verb of Arabic origin usually keep the same consonants but change their internal vowels, although some, like **msafiri (wa-)** (= a traveller) follow the Bantu pattern :

<b>ku-abudu</b>	to adore	-> <b>ibadi</b>	worship
<b>ku-amini</b>	to believe	-> <b>imani</b>	faith
<b>ku-bariki</b>	to bless	-> <b>baraka</b>	a blessing
<b>ku-furahi</b>	to rejoice	-> <b>furaha</b>	joy

<b>ku-safiri</b>	to travel	-> <b>safari</b>	a journey
<b>ku-sali</b>	to pray	-> <b>sala</b>	a pray
<b>ku-sifu</b>	to praise	-> <b>sifa</b>	a praise
<b>ku-subiri</b>	to wait	-> <b>subira</b>	patience
<b>ku-tiba</b>	to cure	-> <b>tabibu</b>	a doctor
<b>ku-tubu</b>	to repent	-> <b>toba</b>	repentance

## 2. NOUNS DERIVED FROM OTHER NOUNS :

### 1. The diminutive prefixes KI- and KIJ- :

(See : [Chapter 16.](#))

<b>jiwe (ma-)</b>	a stone	-> <b>kijiwe (vi-)</b>	a pebble
<b>mji (mi-)</b>	a town	-> <b>kijiji (vi-)</b>	a village
<b>mlima (mi-)</b>	a mountain	-> <b>kilima (vi-)</b>	a hill
<b>mto (mi-)</b>	a river	-> <b>kijito (vi-)</b>	a brook
<b>mtoto (wa-)</b>	a child	-> <b>kitoto (vi-)</b>	a toddler
<b>mtu (wa-)</b>	a person	-> <b>kijitu (vi-)</b>	a dwarf
<b>mwana (wa-)</b>	a child	-> <b>kijana (vi-)</b>	a young person
<b>mwiko (mi-)</b>	a ladle	-> <b>kijiko (vi-)</b>	a spoon
<b>sahani</b>	a plate	-> <b>kisahani (vi-)</b>	a saucer

### 2. The augmentative prefix JI- :

(Voir : [Chapter 13.](#))

<b>mtu (wa-)</b>	a person	-> <b>jitu (ma-)</b>	a giant
<b>mti (mi-)</b>	a tree	-> <b>jiti (ma-)</b>	a large arbre
<b>nyoka</b>	a snake	-> <b>joka (ma-)</b>	a large snake
<b>nyumba</b>	a house	-> <b>jumba (ma-)</b>	a building
<b>nyunyi</b>	a bird	-> <b>juni (ma-)</b>	a large bird

### 3. The collective prefix -MA :

Some classes 9/10 nouns (**N-** gender) have 2 plurals : an ordinary plural and a class 6 plural (prefix **MA-**) that represents a collectivity.

<b>pesa</b>	money	-> <b>mapesa</b>	small change
<b>rafiki</b>	a friend	-> <b>marafiki</b>	a circle of friends
<b>samaki</b>	a fish	-> <b>masamaki</b>	a school of fish
<b>simba</b>	a lion	-> <b>masimba</b>	a pride of lions

### 3. VERBAL DERIVATION AND NOMINAL DERIVATION :

EXAMPLES :

**KWENDA** = to go

VERBS	translation	NOUNS	translation
<b>ku-enda</b>	to go	<b>mwendo</b> <b>mwenzi</b>	a movement a companion
<b>ku-endesha</b>	to lead	<b>mwendeshaji</b>	a driver
<b>ku-endelea</b>	to progress	<b>maendeleo</b>	development

**KUPENDA** = to love

VERBS	translation	NOUNS	translation
<b>ku-penda</b>	to love	<b>kipendo (vi-)</b> <b>mapenzi</b> <b>mpenzi (wa-)</b> <b>upendo</b>	mark of affection desire, affection a lover love
<b>ku-pendwa</b>	to be loved	<b>mpendwa (wa-)</b>	a loved one, a dear
<b>ku-pendelea</b>	to have affection for	<b>upendeleo</b>	inclination, favouritism
<b>ku-pendana</b>	to love each other	<b>upendano</b>	reciprocal love

**KUTUMA** = to use

VERBS	translation	NOUNS	translation
<b>ku-tuma</b>	to use	<b>mtume (wa-) (mi-)</b>	un envoy a messenger un prophet
<b>ku-tumwa</b>	to be employed	<b>mtumwa (wa-)</b>	a slave



<b>ku-tumisha</b>	to assign a task to someone	<b>mtumishi (wa-)</b>	a servant
<b>ku-tumiza</b>	to assign a task to someone	<b>utumizi (ma-)</b>	usefulness employment service

## EXERCISES

### **EXERCISE 1** : Translate into Swahili :

- a. A messenger, a believer, a drunkard, a shepherd, players, spectators, parents, a tailor, a farmer, a servant, a creature, a toddler, a driver, a lover, a leader.
- b. A declaration, an agreement, a blessing, a prayer, faith, repentance, patience, salvation, destruction, a shortage, tranquility, development, favouritism, affection, forgetfulness.
- c. A song, a way, a dream, a key, a cover, a journey, small change, a village, a pebble, a spoon, a saucer, a building, a large snake, a large bird, a pride of lions.

### **EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

1. Waimbaji waliimba nyimbo nzuri.
2. Mlimaji analima shamba lake.
3. Wavuvi wamekwenda baharini kuvua usiku.
4. Huyu mlevi ni mgomvi sana.
5. Kuna walinzi wawili mbele ya jumba la rais.
6. Siwezi kufungua nyumba yangu kwa sababu nimepotea ufunguo wangu.
7. Kizibo cha chupa hii kiko wapi ?
8. Leo usiku, nimeota ndoto njema : nilioa mpenzi wangu.
9. Kijiji chetu hiki kinaendela vizuri.
10. Tajiri huyu ana watumishi wachache na wapishi wawili.
11. Usikose kusikiliza hotuba ya kiongozi wetu katika radio.
12. Siku hizi hatuna ukosefu wa bidhaa madukani.
13. Watamazaji watukufu, sasa mtaangalia mchezo wa mpira baina ya wachezaji wa Tanzania na Kenya.
14. Masimba wamelala msituni, kando ya barabara.
15. Rais alitumbia tujitolee kwa maendeleo ya nchi yetu.



## Chapter 44 - Compound Adjectives

Genuine adjectives are quite few in Swahili. However there are various means of creating new adjectives from nouns, verbs or other words.

### 1. NOUNS OR VERBS PRECEDED BY THE CONNECTIVE "-A" :

One of the most common ways of creating an adjective is to have the connective **-A** precede a noun, which confers to that one an adjectival value. The connective **-A** must agree in class with the noun to which it agrees. Thus :

<b>Maji <u>ya moto</u></b>	= hot water.	(= <i>water of hot</i> )
<b>Maji <u>ya baridi</u></b>	= cold water.	(= <i>water of cold</i> )
<b>Fedha <u>ya kutosha</u></b>	= enough money.	(= <i>money of to be enough</i> )
<b>Mahali <u>pa utulivu</u></b>	= a quiet place.	(= <i>place of calm</i> )

The noun or the word placed after the connective **-A** can take the prefix of manner **KI-**. Thus :

<b>Chakula <u>cha kizungu</u></b>	= European cooking.	(= <i>food of white</i> )
<b>Nyumba <u>ya kisasa</u></b>	= a modern house.	(= <i>house of now</i> )

### 2. COMMON ADJECTIVAL WORDS :

1. Adjectives formed with a noun :

<b>-a baridi</b>	cold
<b>-a bure</b>	free
<b>-a haki</b>	right
<b>-a hatari</b>	dangerous
<b>-a kawaida</b>	natural, régular
<b>-a kushoto</b>	(on the) left
<b>-a kweli</b>	true

<b>-a lazima</b>	necessary
<b>-a moto</b>	hot
<b>-a mwisho</b>	last
<b>-a porini</b>	wild
<b>-a siri</b>	secret
<b>-a taifa</b>	national
<b>-a zamani</b>	old, ancient

2. Adjectives formed with a verb in the infinitive :

<b>-a kufaa</b>	convenient
<b>-a kupendeza</b>	pleasant, nice
<b>-a kulia</b>	(on the) right
<b>-a kutosha</b>	enough, sufficient

3. Prepositional verbs can also be used to express the finality of something :

<b>-a kukatia</b>	for cutting
<b>-a kulimia</b>	for cultivating
<b>-a kupimia</b>	for measuring
<b>-a kusafishia</b>	for cleaning
<b>-a kutilia</b>	for putting

4. Adjectives formed with a word prefixed with **KI-** :

<b>-a kienyeji</b>	native, local
<b>-a kihindi</b>	Indian
<b>-a kike</b>	female, feminine
<b>-a kimataifa</b>	international
<b>-a kisasa</b>	modern
<b>-a kitoto</b>	childish
<b>-a kiume</b>	male, masculine
<b>-a kizungu</b>	European

5. Adjectives formed with an adverb :

<b>Chakula cha jana</b>	yesterday's food
<b>Desturi za kale</b>	old habits / customs
<b>Desturi za kwetu</b>	local habits / customs
<b>Mashamba ya mbali</b>	remote plantations

**Watu wa hapa**

local people

6. The ordinal numbers are formed on this model (see : [Chapter 22](#)) :

<b>-a kwanza</b>	first
<b>-a pili</b>	second
<b>-a tatu</b>	third
<b>-a nne</b>	fourth

7. In common noun associations, the particule **-A** has all but disappeared :

<b>Askari koti</b>	a police officer in uniform
<b>Askari kanzu</b>	a plain clothes policeman
<b>Bata maji</b>	a water fowl
<b>Kijana mwanamke</b>	a young girl
<b>Mbwa mwitu</b>	a wolf
<b>Mtu tajiri</b>	a rich person
<b>Mwaka jana</b>	last year
<b>Mwana kondoo</b>	a lamb
<b>Viazi ulaya</b>	potatoes

### 3. ADJECTIVAL NOUNS AFTER THE PARTICLE "-ENYE" :

The possessive particle **-ENYE** (= "who / which / that has", "having") placed in front of a noun confers to that one an adjectival value. That particle agrees with the possessor by taking a particular prefix of agreement that is quite similar to the object infix of the corresponding class. Thus :

<b>Mtu <u>mwenye</u> afya</b>	a man in good health
<b>Watu <u>wenye</u> mali</b>	rich people
<b>Mti <u>wenye</u> miiba</b>	a thorny tree
<b>Miti <u>yenye</u> nguvu</b>	vigorous trees
<b>Chumba <u>chenye</u> giza</b>	a dark room.
<b>Samaki <u>mwenye</u> mafuta</b>	a fat fish

#### Agreements of the adjectival particle -ENYE

<b>CLASS</b>	<b>NOUNS</b>	<b>-ENYE</b>	<b>CLASS</b>	<b>NOUNS</b>	<b>-ENYE</b>
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------

CI 1	<b>Mtu</b>	<b>MWENYE</b>	CI 2	<b>Watu</b>	<b>WENYE</b>
CI 3	<b>Mti</b>	<b>WENYE</b>	CI 4	<b>Miti</b>	<b>YENYE</b>
CI 5	<b>Gari</b>	<b>LENYE</b>	CI 6	<b>Magari</b>	<b>YENYE</b>
CI 7	<b>Kiti</b>	<b>CHENYE</b>	CI 8	<b>Viti</b>	<b>VYENYE</b>
CI 9	<b>Nguo</b>	<b>YENYE</b>	CI 10	<b>Nguo</b>	<b>ZENYE</b>

**NOTE :**

The adjectival particule **-ENYE** is more generally used to mark possession :

**Mtu mwenye ng'ombe**

= somebody with cows.

**Yule mwenye kofia**

= that one with a hat.

**Kiti chenye miguu mitatu**

= a chair with three legs.

**Chai yenye sukari**

= tea with sugar

#### 4. THE RELATIVE USED AS AN ADJECTIVE :

We can also, like what is done in English with a past participle, use a verb in a relative construction or a general relative. (See : [Chapter 52](#) and [Chapter 53](#).)

**EXAMPLES :**

**Meza iliyovunjika**

a broken table

**Mwaka uliopita**

last year

**Mwezi ujao**

next month

**Nchi isiyo na maji**

an arid country

**Samaki asiye na mafuta**

a lean fish (*which has no fat*)

**PROVERB :**

**Penye nia pana njia**

### VOCABULARY

**Dhahabu**

gold

**Homa**

fever

**Giza**

darkness

**Jasho**

sweat

<b>Harufu</b>	an odor	<b>Jinsi</b>	the manner, the way
<b>Hela</b>	money	<b>Kamusi</b>	a dictionary
<b>Herufi</b>	a letter (alphabet)	<b>Kimya</b>	silence
<b>Hesabu</b>	a calculation, an account	<b>Orodha</b>	a list

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

Hot water, an old house, the last day, a usual work, the first time, European food, English money, the left arm, the right foot, a broken table, a dark room, a rich person, a man in good health, lean meat, old habits, a modern car, a dangerous game, a secret love, a right person, a pleasant work, a male child, the second child, a water fowl, potatoes, a lamb.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mwanangu hapati chakula cha kutosha.
2. Napenda kula chakula cha kienyeji.
3. Lazima wakulima wafuate kilimo cha kisasa.
4. Mtoto amevunja mkono wake wa kulia.
5. Nadhani leo itakuwa siku ya mwisho ya Ramadhani.
6. Tunataka kupiga picha za wanyama wa porini.
7. Ninapenda viazi ulaya kuliko viazi vitamu.
8. Mbwa mwitu amekula mwana mbuzi mmoja.
9. Mke wake amemzalia mtoto wa kike.
10. Ninahitaji karatasi ya kuandikia barua.
11. Nipe chai yenye sukari.
12. Samaki mwenye mafuta si mzuri kwa afya yako.
13. Mwaka uliopita tulipita nchi isiyo na maji.
14. Wanyama wapenda kulala katika mahali pa giza.
15. Mwrite mtu mwenye kofia, nataka kuzungumza naye.

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 45 - The Locative Classes

There are three distinct locative classes in Swahili : Classes 16, 17 and 18, according to the nomenclature of Bantu languages.

- Class 16 is characterized by the class prefix **P-**, **PA-** or **PO-**. It indicates a definite position. It contains only one noun : **MAHALI** (or **MAHALA** or **PAHALI**), a word which means : a place. This class is especially present in the class agreements which it involves, often even in the absence of the noun "**MAHALI**". It is also attested by the demonstratives **HAPA**, **PALE**, **HAPO** and the connective **PA**.
- Class 17 is characterized by the class prefix **KU-**. It indicates a movement from one place to another or an indefinite position. This class does not comprise any noun, but it is attested by the demonstratives **HUKU**, **KULE**, **HUKO** and the connective **KWA**.
- Class 18 is characterized by the class prefix **M-** or **MW-**. It indicates a position inside a place. It is attested by the demonstratives **HUMU**, **MLE**, **HUMO** and the connective **MWA**.

### 1. ADJECTIVES :

The adjective agrees by taking the locative prefix **PA-**.

<b>Mahali <u>p</u>azuri.</b>	a good place.
<b>Mahali <u>p</u>abaya.</b>	a bad place.
<b>Mahali <u>p</u>adogo.</b>	a small place.
<b>Mahali <u>p</u>ema.</b>	a nice place.
<b>Mahali <u>p</u>engine.</b>	another place.

### 2. VERBS :

(See : [Chapter 17](#) and [Chapter 18](#).)

There are three locative subject prefixes : **PA-**, **KU-** and **MU-** corresponding respectively to classes 16, 17 et 18. Those exist only in the 3rd person singular. A point worth noting is that the locative, which is usually in the position of complement in the English sentence, can easily be the subject of a sentence in Swahili :

Compare the word order :

**Bondeni kulipandwa minazi.**  
Coconut trees were planted in the valley.

#### EXAMPLES :

**Mahali hapa pamejaa watu.**                      This place is full of people.

**Mezani hapakuwa na kitambaa**

There was no table cloth on the table.

**Nyumbani mwetu mmewekwa vyombo vipya.**

New equipment was put in our house.

**Hakuna kitu nyuma ya kabati.**

There is nothing behind the cupboard.

**Hapa palikufa simba.**

A lion died here.

**Mwituni mmelala wanyama.**

Animals are sleeping in the forest.

They are frequently used with the verb **KUWA NA** (= to have) to translate "there is" or "there isn't":

#### EXAMPLES :

**Pana mtoto mlangoni.**

There is a child at the door.

**Kuna wageni shambani.**

There are foreigners in the field.

**Mna kitu sandukuni.**

There is something in the box.

**Hapana miti hapa.**

There are no trees here.

**Hakuna mahindi mengi shambani.**

There is not much corn in the field.

**Hamna maji kisimani.**

There is no water in the well.

### **3. THE CONNECTIVES "PA", "MWA" and "KWA" :**

(See : [Chapter 26](#) and [Chapter 29](#).)

1. **PA** is used after the noun **MAHALI** and also after nouns suffixed in **-NI**. It is also used to form compound adjectives (See : [Chapter 44](#).) :

#### EXAMPLES :

**Mahali pa utulivu.**

A quiet place.

**Mahali pa hatari.**

A dangerous place.

**Aliacha jembe mlangoni pa mzee.**

He left the hoe at the old man's door.

2. **MWA** is used after nouns suffixed in **-NI** :

#### EXAMPLES :

**Watoto wanasoma nyumbani mwa mwalimu.**

The children learn at the teacher's house.

**Miongoni mwa watoto, mmoja anasimama.**

Among the children, one of them is standing.

3. The connective **KWA** is certainly one of the most frequently employed and it possesses many different meanings : at, to, by, for, with, and, etc. :

#### EXAMPLES :



Anakaa kwa Ali.

Nitakwenda kwa jumbe.

Alifika kwa gari la moshi.

Chakula hiki hakifai kwa wageni.

Nitakula wali kwa mchuzi.

He stays at Ali's.

I will go to the chief's.

He arrived by train.

This meal is not appropriate for the guests.

I will eat rice with / and sauce.

#### 4. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES :

Possessive adjectives take the prefixes **PA-**, **KW-** or **MW-** to agree with nouns suffixed in **-NI** (See : [Chapter 29](#)) :

EXAMPLES :

Majirani pake.

Nyumbani kwako.

Moyoni mwangu.

In his neighbourhood.

At your house.

In my heart.

#### 5. LOCATIVE ADVERBS :

(See : [Chapter 26](#).)

#### 6. THE INTERROGATIVE WORD "WAPI ?" :

(See : [Chapter 21](#).)

#### 7. DEMONSTRATIVES :

(See : [Chapter 26](#).)

PLACE	Proximity	Distance	Reference	CLASS
Precise place	<b>HAPA</b> here	<b>PALE</b> around here	<b>HAPO</b> here inside	Class 16
Vague place	<b>HUKU</b> over there	<b>KULE</b> by over there	<b>HUKO</b> there inside	Class 17
Interior place	<b>HUMU</b> there	<b>MLE</b> there around	<b>HUMO</b> inside	Class 17

These demonstratives can be used by themselves, or with a noun of place suffixed in **-NI** (= at, in, on).

#### EXAMPLES :

**Mahali pale.**

This place over there.

**Itie hapa mezani.**

Put it here on the table.

**Anakaa huku.**

He lives here.

**Miongoni mwa watu wale kule.**

Among these people over there.

**Tia sahani hizi kabatini humo !**

Put these plates inside this cupboard.

### 8. THE RELATIVE INFIXES "PO-", "KO-" and "MO-" :

We insert the relative infix "PO-" (or "KO-" or "MO-") between the tense marker and the verbal root to signify "when", "where", "in which".

#### EXAMPLES :

**Tuliumwa na kunguni tulipolala.**

We were bitten by insects while we were sleeping.

**Kipofu awezi kuona anakokwenda wala aoni anakotoka.**

A blind man can't see where he goes nor where he comes from.

**Shimoni alimoingia panya.**

The hole which the mouse entered.



Mzee Meko

Mzee Meko alipofika nyumbani aligonga lakini mkewe alikataa kumfungulia akalala nje hadi asubuhi.

When Mzee Meko arrived at home, he knocked at the door but his wife refused to open, and he slept till the morning.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Chungu (vy-)</b>	a pot	<b>Kiroboto (vi-)</b>	a flea
<b>Kibao (vi-)</b>	a panel	<b>Kitana (vi-)</b>	a comb
<b>Kifo (vi-)</b>	death	<b>Kitendawili (vi-)</b>	a riddle
<b>Kinanda (vi-)</b>	a piano	<b>Kiu (vi-)</b>	thirst
<b>Kipini (vi-)</b>	a handle	<b>Kiungo (vi-)</b>	an articulation
<b>Kiraka (vi-)</b>	a mending	<b>Kizunguzungu (vi-)</b>	a dizzy spell

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

A nice place, a dark place, a quiet place, another place, inside the house, outside, behind the door, on top of the mountain, in front of the shop, in the box, in the middle of the city, on the table, in the cupboard, in the teacher's house, in the Arab's shop, at the old man's door, at Ali's, at my father's, in your house, at that place over there.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Je, yako maji kwako ? - Hakuna.
2. Simama ! Ninatolemka hapa.
3. Kuna watu wengi huko Dar es Salaam.
4. Pashia mizigo katika gari !
5. Watu wa makabila mengi wanakaa Mombasa.
6. Mbwa analala nje. Usimwache kuingia ndani !
7. Ninakaa kwa rafiki yangu Abdallah.
8. Hakuna chungu wala vyombo vingine vyote kabatini.



## Chapter 46 - The -KI- Tense

The **-KI-** tense is a tense that marks the simultaneity of an action in relation to another. Its meaning changes slightly according to its position in the sentence : if it is the first verb in a sentence, it corresponds to a present conditional in English ; if it follows a first verb which is in the present, past or future, then it corresponds to a present participle (verb ending in -ing) or to an infinitive in English.

### 1. THE "KI" TENSE - AFFIRMATIVE :

The tense marker **-KI-** is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verbal root. The meaning of that infix is "if". The verb in **-KI-** is followed by a verb in the future or in the imperative, in the sentence.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + KI + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to do, to make

<b>NI-KI-FANYA</b>	-> <b>nikifanya</b>	if I make
<b>U-KI-FANYA</b>	-> <b>ukifanya</b>	if you make
<b>A-KI-FANYA</b>	-> <b>akifanya</b>	if he / she makes
<b>TU-KI-FANYA</b>	-> <b>tukifanya</b>	if we make
<b>M-KI-FANYA</b>	-> <b>mkifanya</b>	if you make
<b>WA-KI-FANYA</b>	-> <b>wakifanya</b>	if they make

NOTE : Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL : **KWENDA** = to go

<b>NI-KI-ENDA</b>	-> <b>nikienda</b>	if I go
<b>U-KI-ENDA</b>	-> <b>ukienda</b>	if you go
<b>A-KI-ENDA</b>	-> <b>akienda</b>	if he / she goes
<b>TU-KI-ENDA</b>	-> <b>tukienda</b>	if we go
<b>M-KI-ENDA</b>	-> <b>mkienda</b>	if you go
<b>WA-KI-ENDA</b>	-> <b>wakienda</b>	if they go

EXAMPLES :

**Ukipanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro, lazima uchukue nguo za kutosha.**

If you climb up Mount Kilimanjaro, you must take enough clothes.

**Ukienda Ulaya, utaninunulia zawadi.**

If you go to Europe, you will buy me a gift.

**Mpishi akichelewa tena leo, mfukuze.**

If the cook is late again today, fire him.

## 2. THE "KI" TENSE - NEGATIVE :

The negative tense marker **-SIPO-** is placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root. Since **-SIPO-** is a negative mark of time, affirmative subject prefixes must be used in conjunction with it. That infix means "if not" or "unless".

### SUBJECT PREFIX + SIPO + VERB RADICAL

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to do, to make

<b>NI-SIPO-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; nisipofanya</b>	if I don't make
<b>U-SIPO-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; usipofanya</b>	if you don't make
<b>A-SIPO-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; asipofanya</b>	if he / she doesn't make
<b>TU-SIPO-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tusipofanya</b>	if we don't make
<b>M-SIPO-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; msipofanya</b>	if you don't make
<b>WA-SIPO-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; wasipofanya</b>	if they don't make

NOTE : Monosyllabic verbs keep their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL : **KWENDA** = to go

<b>NI-SIPO-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; nisipokwenda</b>	if I don't go
<b>U-SIPO-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; usipokwenda</b>	if you don't go
<b>A-SIPO-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; asipokwenda</b>	if he / she doesn't go
<b>TU-SIPO-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; tusipokwenda</b>	if we don't go
<b>M-SIPO-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; msipokwenda</b>	if you don't go
<b>WA-SIPO-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; wasipokwenda</b>	if they don't go

## 3. THE -KI- TENSE AS A PRESENT PARTICIPLE :

When a verb in **-KI-** follows a first verb in the sentence, it marks the simultaneity of the second action in relation to the first. According to the context, it will be translated differently in English : either by a verb ending in "-ing" (present participle), or by an infinitive.

<u>Verb ending in "-ing" :</u>	<b>Walikuwa wakicheza.</b>	They were playing.
	<b>Mtoto alipita akiimba.</b>	The child passed singing.
<u>Infinitive :</u>	<b>Tuliwaona wakicheza.</b>	We saw them play.
	<b>Nilimwona akilia.</b>	I saw her cry.

The first verb can be conjugated in different tenses :

<u>Past Perfect :</u>	<b>Amekuwa akicheza.</b>	He / she has been playing.
<u>Simple past :</u>	<b>Alikuwa akicheza.</b>	He / she was playing.
<u>Future :</u>	<b>Atakuwa akicheza.</b>	He / she will be playing.

(See : [Chapter 54 - Compound Tenses.](#))

EXPRESSION :

**Ukipenda usipende, ni mamoja kwangu !**

## VOCABULARY

<b>Bastola</b>	a gun	<b>Kamba</b>	a rope
<b>Cherehani</b>	a sewing machine	<b>Karabai</b>	a pressure lamp
<b>Filimbi</b>	a whistle	<b>Kufuli</b>	a lock
<b>Fimbo</b>	a walking stick	<b>Lami</b>	tar
<b>Gundi</b>	glue	<b>Lipu</b>	plaster
<b>Hema</b>	a tent	<b>Seng'e seng'e</b>	barbed wire

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. If you like, if they eat, if I drink, if the tree falls, if she answers, if you think, if they come, if I give you, if he dies, if he tells us, if you get permission, if the food is brought, if he gets eggs, if you tell me your name, if the letters are brought.
- b. He was reading, I saw him laugh, I heard her sing, they will be playing tomorrow, they are tired because they were playing, I have seen the tree fall, they saw the tourists arrive, he was cooking, the food was cooking, I saw you cry.
- c. The teacher was teaching how to read and write, the Masais will dance tomorrow evening, we worked in the bush, if you come tomorrow I'll give you money, if you see animals you'll be lucky.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

- 1. Nilimwona mwalimu akijenga nyumba yake.
- 2. Tusipopata mvua, mihindi haitaota.
- 3. Mkienda Mombasa leo, mtawaona watoto wetu wakicheza mpira.
- 4. Chakula kisipoiva, hakitafaa.
- 5. Ukienda Nairobi, ninulie vitu kadhaa.
- 6. Alikuwa akiendesha gari lake haraka mno.
- 7. Tuliwaona wanafunzi wetu wakicheza mjini.
- 8. Mzee alikuwa akilala mkutanoni.
- 9. Mkienda kule, mtamwona mlimaji akilima shambani kwake.
- 10. Ukijaribu sana, utaweza kusema kiswahili safi.
- 11. Nisipopumzika sasa, nitachoka sana.
- 12. Akija asiye, ni mamoja kwangu.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 47 - Conditional Tenses

Apart from the **-KI-** tense that may already correspond to the use of the English Present Conditional, there are two more conditional tenses in Swahili: The Present Conditional and the Past Conditional. These two tenses are used to form assumptions or hypothesis. (See : [Chapter 46 - The -KI- Tense](#) and [Chapter 48 - Hypothesis.](#))

### 1. THE PRESENT CONDITIONAL :

#### A. AFFIRMATIVE :

The tense marker of the present conditional is the infix **-NGE-**, placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + NGE + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

<b>NI-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; ningependa</b>	I would like
<b>U-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; ungependa</b>	you would like
<b>A-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; angependa</b>	he / she would like
<b>TU-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; tungependa</b>	we would like
<b>M-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; mungependa</b>	you would like
<b>WA-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; wangependa</b>	they would like

Monosyllabic verbs keep their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

<b>NI-NGE-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; ningekula</b>	I would eat
<b>A-NGE-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; angekwenda</b>	he / she would go
<b>U-NGE-KUWA</b>	<b>-&gt; ungekuwa</b>	you would be
<b>WA-NGE-KUWA NA</b>	<b>-&gt; wangukuwa na</b>	they would have

#### B. NEGATIVE :



In the negative form, the negative infix **-SI-** is added in front of the tense marker of the present conditional **-NGE-**. Since it is a negative mark, affirmative subject prefixes must be used in conjunction with it.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + NGE + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

<b>NI-SI-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; nisingependa</b>	I wouldn't like
<b>U-SI-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; usingependa</b>	you wouldn't like
<b>A-SI-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; asingependa</b>	he / she wouldn't like
<b>TU-SI-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; tusingependa</b>	we wouldn't like
<b>M-SI-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; msingependa</b>	you wouldn't like
<b>WA-SI-NGE-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; wasingependa</b>	they wouldn't like

Monosyllabic verbs keep their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

<b>NI-SI-NGE-KU-LA</b>	<b>-&gt; nisingekula</b>	I wouldn't eat
<b>A-SI-NGE-KWENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; asingekwenda</b>	he / she wouldn't go
<b>U-SI-NGE-KUWA</b>	<b>-&gt; usingekuwa</b>	you wouldn't be
<b>WA-SI-NGE-KUWA NA</b>	<b>-&gt; wasingekuwa na</b>	they wouldn't have

**2. THE PAST CONDITIONAL :**

**A. AFFIRMATIVE :**

The tense marker of the past conditional is the infix **-NGALI-** (formed of **NGE + LI**), placed between the subject prefix and the verbal root.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + NGALI + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

<b>NI-NGALI-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; ningalipenda</b>	I would have liked
<b>U-NGALI-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; ungalipenda</b>	you would have liked
<b>A-NGALI-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; angalipenda</b>	he / she would have liked
<b>TU-NGALI-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; tungalipenda</b>	we would have liked
<b>M-NGALI-PENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; mngalipenda</b>	you would have liked

**WA-NGALI-PENDA -> wanalipenda**

they would have liked

Monosyllabic verbs retain their infinitive prefix **KU-** :**NI-NGALI-KU-LA -> ningalikula**

I would have eaten

**A-NGALI-KWENDA -> analikwenda**

he / she would have gone

**U-NGALI-KUWA -> ungalikuwa**

you would have been

**WA-NGALI-KUWA NA -> wanalikuwa na**

they would have had

**B. NEGATIVE :**

In the negative form, the negative infix **-SI-** is added in front of the tense marker of the past conditional **-NGALI-**. Since it is a negative mark, affirmative subject prefixes must be used in conjunction with it.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + NGALI + VERB RADICAL**
MODEL : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love**NI-SI-NGALI-PENDA -> nisingalipenda**

I wouldn't have liked

**U-SI-NGALI-PENDA -> usingalipenda**

you wouldn't have liked

**A-SI-NGALI-PENDA -> asingalipenda**

he / she wouldn't have liked

**TU-SI-NGALI-PENDA -> tusingalipenda**

we wouldn't have liked

**M-SI-NGALI-PENDA -> msingalipenda**

you wouldn't have liked

**WA-SI-NGALI-PENDA -> wasingalipenda**

they wouldn't have liked

Monosyllabic verbs retain their infinitive prefix **KU-** :**NI-SI-NGALI-KU-LA -> nisingalikula**

I wouldn't have eaten

**A-SI-NGALI-KWENDA -> asingalikwenda**

he / she wouldn't have gone

**U-SI-NGALI-KUWA -> usingalikuwa**

you wouldn't have been

**WA-SI-NGALI-KUWA NA -> wasingalikuwa na**

they wouldn't have had

**VOCABULARY**

<b>Ku-aga</b>	to say goodbye	<b>Ku-dhani</b>	to think
<b>Ku-ajiri</b>	to employ, to hire	<b>Ku-fukuza</b>	to chase, to fire
<b>Ku-beba</b>	to carry on the back	<b>Ku-goma</b>	to go on strike
<b>Ku-chafya</b>	to sneeze	<b>Ku-hesabu</b>	to count, to calculate
<b>Ku-chambua</b>	to sort	<b>Ku-husu</b>	to concern
<b>ku-chimba</b>	to dig	<b>Ku-kusanya</b>	to gather, to heap

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

- a. I would like, I would make, I would take, I wouldn't have, I wouldn't go, you wouldn't want, you could, you would come, you wouldn't eat, you would stop, he would borrow, he would fill, he wouldn't count, he would fire, he would sneeze, we would not be tired, we wouldn't know, we would come back, we would wear, we would go by, you would read (plur), you would receive (plur), you wouldn't bring (plur), you wouldn't emigrate (plur), you would buy (plur), they would laugh, they wouldn't get angry, they would hope, they wouldn't despise, they would understand.
- b. I would have left, I would have done, I wouldn't have answered, I wouldn't have seen, you would have written, you would have met, you wouldn't have known, he would have waited, he would have got, he wouldn't have agreed, we would have come, we would have met each other, we wouldn't have been, you would have been (plur), you would have swept (plur), you wouldn't have chosen (plur), they would have employed, they would have dug, they would have looked alike, they wouldn't have liked.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Usingevuta sigara.
2. Angeweza kuja leo.
3. Ungeniuliza.
4. Usingalikunywa pombe ile.
5. Asingaliingia chumba kile.
6. Tungejua kiswahili.
7. Mizigo ingaliletwa hapa.
8. Mbegu zingepandwa.
9. Mzee asingalikufa.
10. Nisingekuwa mgonjwa.
11. Ungalituma barua.
12. Tungalipwa mshahara.



## Chapter 48 - Hypothesis

Just like in English, it is possible to express 3 different hypothetic levels in Swahili :

- What is POTENTIAL, or Present Real Hypothesis.
- What is ASSUMPTIVE, or Past Real Hypothesis.
- What is SPECULATIVE, or Past Irreal Hypothesis.

### 1. PRESENT REAL HYPOTHESIS :

We speak here of a fact that has not yet taken place, and imagine what will happen if something else is to happen.

We use the **-KI-** tense to express the condition "if...". The second verb which expresses the consequence is in the Future or the Imperative. (See : [Chapter 46 - The -KI- Tense](#).)

#### EXAMPLES :

**Wakinywa pombe ile, watalewa.**

If they drink that local beer, they will get drunk.

**Ukimwona Hamisi, mwambie aje hapa.**

If you see Hamisi, tell him to come here.

**Kama ukienda Zanzibar, utaona jumba la Sultani.**

If you go to Zanzibar, you'll see the Sultan's palace.

**Barua isipokelekwa leo, itachelewa.**

If the letter is not sent today, it will arrive late.

### 2. PAST REAL HYPOTHESIS :

We speak here of a fact that has not taken place, but whose probable degree of realization is very low.

We use the Present Conditional to formulate this type of assumption. The second verb must be conjugated in the same tense. (Voir : [Chapter 47 - The Present Conditional](#).)

#### MODEL :

**Ningekwenda sasa, ningemwona.**

If I went now, I would see him.

*(If I would go now, I would see him.)*

#### EXAMPLES :

**Ningejaribu sana, ningeweza kusema kiswahili.**

If I really tried, I could speak Swahili.

**Ungekuja leo, ningekupikia keki.**

If you came today, I would cook you a cake.

**Ungesoma gazeti ile, ungejua habari zote.**

If you read that newspaper, you'd know all the news.

**Mvua ingenyesha leo, ningepanda mbegu zangu.**

If it rained today, I would plant my seeds.

**Nisingekuwa mzee sasa, ningeweza kupanda mlima wa Kilimanjaro.**

If I wasn't an old man now, I could climb Mount Kilimanjaro.

**Wangepumzika, wasingechoka.**

If they rested, they wouldn't be tired.

### 3. PAST IRREAL HYPOTHESIS :

We make here an intellectual speculation, a comeback on an action that has already taken place, and for which we imagine another unfolding. The degree of realization of that speculation is nil.

We use the Past Conditional to formulate this type of hypothesis. The second verb is in the same tense. (See : [Chapter 47 - The Past Conditional](#).)

#### MODEL :

**Ningalijaribu sana, ningalifaulu.**

If I had tried hard, I would have succeeded.

*(If I would have tried hard, I would have succeeded.)*

#### EXAMPLES :

**Ningalikujua, ningaliweza kukuuliza.**

If I had known you, I could have asked you.

**Ungalikuja jana, ningalikupikia keki.**

If you had come yesterday, I would have cooked you a cake.

**Mtoto angalianguka mtini, angalikufa.**

If the child had fallen from the tree, he would have died.

**Mvua isingalinyesha jana, nisingaliweza kupanda mbegu zangu.**

If it had not rained yesterday, I couldn't have planted my seeds.

**Wangalipumzika, wasingalichoka.**

If they had rested, they wouldn't be tired.

### 4. MIXING TENSES :

It is quite possible to combine two tenses to formulate hypothesis, so that an assumption formulated in the Present Conditional can be followed by its realization in the Past Conditional, and conversely.

#### EXAMPLES :

**Ningekuwa mzee sasa, ningaliweza kukuambia jambo lile.** If I was an old man now, I could have told you about it.

**Ungalisoma gazeti hili, ungejua habari zote sasa.** If you had read this newspaper, you would know all the news now.

**Ungalimwambia habari, asingekwenda safari.**

If you had told him the news, he would not have gone on his journey.

**Isingekuwa mwezi wa Desemba, ungaliweza kwenda Uingereza.**

If we weren't in December, you could have gone to England.

PROVERB :

**Usipoziba ufa, utajenga ukuta**

NOW, LEARN THE SONG : MALAIKA :

Malaika, nakupenda Malaika.  
Malaika, nakupenda Malaika.  
Nami nifanyeje, kijana mwenzio,  
Nashindwa na mali sina, we,  
Ningekuhua Malaika.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Ubaguzi</b>	segregation
<b>Ubavu (mbavu)</b>	a side
<b>Ubovu</b>	rot
<b>Udongo ulaya</b>	cement
<b>Ufuko</b>	the sea shore
<b>Uhai</b>	life

<b>Ukoo</b>	a clan
<b>Ukucha (kucha)</b>	a claw
<b>Umande</b>	dew
<b>Upinde</b>	an arc
<b>Usaha</b>	pus
<b>Wavu (nyavu)</b>	a net

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

- a. If I read, if you climbed, if we had eaten, if they had tried, if I had the key, if the luggage had come, if the mail was brought, if you had come, if it rained, if you spoke Swahili, if I had come yesterday, if I had a motorbike.
- b. If the tree had not fallen, if the house was not here, if you weren't a teacher, if she wasn't sick, if the doctor had not come, if it was not dangerous, the old man wouldn't have died, he wouldn't have had an accident, if I didn't go to Moshi, we wouldn't have found a hotel, if we hadn't come late.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

- 1. Kama ungejua kusoma, ningekununulia kitabu.
- 2. Ungepata mshahara, ungepata chakula.
- 3. Ungalipata kazi, ungalipata mshahara.
- 4. Angepanda mihindi, angeweza kupata mavuno mazuri.
- 5. Tungalilima mwaka huu, tungalipata mavuno.
- 6. Tukipata samaki, hatutanunua nyama.
- 7. Kama nchi hii ingepata mvua, watu wengi wangejenga hapa.
- 8. Ungevaa koti la mvua, usingesikia baridi.
- 9. Ningekuwa wewe, nisingevaa nguo ile.
- 10. Ungalimwambia shida zako, bwana angaliweza kukusaidia.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 49 - Habitual Present Tense

In addition to the Present Definite and the Present Indefinite, Swahili possesses a third tense in the present, the habitual Present. This tense is used to speak about usual practices or truths of a general order, without making reference to any specific time.

(See : [Chapter 8 - The Present Definite](#) and [Chapter 10 - The Present Indefinite](#).)

The Habitual Present can in many cases be used instead of the Present Indefinite.

### 1. THE AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

The tense marker of the Habitual Present is the prefix **HU-** which is placed in front of the verbal root. The termination of the verb does not change.

Because the Habitual Present doesn't take any subject prefixes, this verbal form is identical for all persons and for all nominal classes. When it becomes necessary to identify the person, we use the autonomous personal pronouns. (See : [Chapter 7 - The Autonomous Personal Pronouns](#).)

#### HU + VERB RADICAL

MODEL 1 : **KUPENDA** = to like, to love

<b>MIMI</b>	<b>HUPENDA</b>	I like
<b>WEWE</b>	<b>HUPENDA</b>	you like
<b>YEYE</b>	<b>HUPENDA</b>	he / she likes
<b>SISI</b>	<b>HUPENDA</b>	we like
<b>NINYI</b>	<b>HUPENDA</b>	you like
<b>WAO</b>	<b>HUPENDA</b>	they like

Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL 2 : **KULA** = to eat

<b>MIMI</b>	<b>HULA</b>	I eat
<b>WEWE</b>	<b>HULA</b>	you eat
<b>YEYE</b>	<b>HULA</b>	he / she eats
<b>SISI</b>	<b>HULA</b>	we eat
<b>NINYI</b>	<b>HULA</b>	you eat
<b>WAO</b>	<b>HULA</b>	they eat



EXAMPLES :**Daktari huja hapa Jumanne.**

The doctor usually comes here on Tuesday.

**Kidege, hukuwaza kidege.**

Little bird, I dream of you little bird.

**Duka lile huuza mkate.**

That shop sells bread.

**Ng'ombe hula majani.**

Cows eat grass.

**Basi la Iringa hufika huko njiapanda saa nane.**

The Iringa bus usually comes here at the crossroads at 2 p.m.

**Mwenye kutega kitendawili husema : "Kitendawili !".**

The one who poses a riddle says : "Riddle !".

**Na wasikilizaji wake hujibu : "Tega !".**

And his listeners answer : "Set it !".

**2. THE NEGATIVE FORM :**

The Habitual Present has no specific form in the negative. Instead, the negative form of the Present Definite tense is used. (See : [Chapter 8 - The Present Definite, Negative Form.](#))

**3. USE :**

The Habitual Present is frequently used in **METHALI** = Swahili sayings and proverbs (See : [Methali #01.](#)), as well as in **VITENDAWILI** = Swahili riddles, for which there is usually no specific time reference :

EXAMPLES :**Haba na haba hujaza kibaba.**

Little by little fills up the measure.

**Paka akiondoka, panya hutawala.**

When the cat is away, the mice will play.

**Mpanda ovyo, hula ovyo.**

He who sows disorderly fashion will eat likewise.

**Ubishi mwingi huleta mateso.**

Too much joking brings quarrel.

**Kitendawili ? - Tega !****Hulala tulalapo, huamka tuamkapo. (jua)**Goes to sleep when we sleep, wakes up when we get up. (*the sun*)**Huwafanya watu wote walie. (moshi)**

Makes everybody cry. (*smoke*)

## VOCABULARY

<b>Kanzu</b>	a man's muslim robe	<b>Ramani</b>	a map, a plan
<b>Kaptula</b>	shorts	<b>Sakafu</b>	the ground, the floor
<b>Maiti</b>	a corpse, a body	<b>Shaba</b>	copper
<b>Mashua</b>	a boat	<b>Sindano</b>	a syringe
<b>Nafaka</b>	grains	<b>Stesheni</b>	a station
<b>Nguzo</b>	a pillar	<b>Takataka</b>	refuse, waste

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

### EXERCISE 1 : Translate into Swahili :

I go, he arrives, we rest, he starts, you eat, he thinks, she speaks, you like, they die, he goes, we rejoice, she cries, you answer, he drinks, they catch, I need, he leaves, we wait, she closes, you come back.

### EXERCISE 2 : Translate into English :

1. Mayai hupatikana hapa kila jumatatu.
2. Mlango wa shule hufunguliwa saa moja.
3. Nguo hufuliwa kila siku mbili.
4. Pikipiki huhitaji petroli na oili.
5. Watu hupumzika Jumapili.
6. Mkulima huyo hupata mavuno mazuri.
7. Basi huondoka stesheni saa mbili na nusu.
8. Kitendawili : Mzee Kombe akilia, watu hufurahi. (Mvua).
9. Kitendawili : Mwanamke mfupi hutengeneza pombe nzuri. (Nyuki).
10. Kitendawili : Hula lakini hashibi. (Sindano).



## Chapter 50 - The -KA- Tenses

The tense marker **-KA-** indicates the consecutivity of an action in relation to another.

We distinguish 3 uses of the infix marker **-KA-** :

1. The PAST NARRATIVE
2. The CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE
3. The TELEGRAPHIC STYLE

### 1. THE PAST NARRATIVE :

The Past Narrative exists only in the affirmative.

The infix **-KA-** is placed between the affirmative subject prefix and the verb radical. This tense accommodates object infixes, but cannot be used in relative constructions.

#### A) PAST NARRATIVE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

**SUBJECT PREFIX + KA + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>NI-KA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; nikafanya</b>	and I made
<b>U-KA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; ukafanya</b>	and you made
<b>A-KA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; akafanya</b>	and he / she made
<b>TU-KA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tukafanya</b>	and we made
<b>M-KA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mkafanya</b>	and you made
<b>WA-KA-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; wakafanya</b>	and they made

NOTE : Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

MODEL : **KWENDA** = to go

<b>NI-KA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; nikaenda</b>	and I went
<b>U-KA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; ukaenda</b>	and you went
<b>A-KA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; akaenda</b>	and he / she went
<b>TU-KA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; tukaenda</b>	and we went

<b>M-KA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; mkaenda</b>	and you went
<b>WA-KA-ENDA</b>	<b>-&gt; wakaenda</b>	and they went

## **B) USE OF THE PAST NARRATIVE :**

The Past Narrative (the **-KA-** tense) is used for narration, but it is often preceded in speech by a first verb in the Simple Past, be it affirmative or negative :

**EXAMPLE :**     **Nilikwenda kijijini, nikamwona rafiki yangu, nikamwomba aje nami mjini, akakubali.**  
 I went to the village, I saw my friend, I asked him to come with me to town, and he accepted.

This example shows that the word **NA** (= and) is never expressed : this concept is already contained within the tense marker **-KA-**.

To express negation, we use the Subjunctive negative instead. (See : [Chapter 33 - The Subjunctive.](#))

**EXAMPLE :**     **Nilikwenda markiti, nikatafuta tungule (nyanya), nisipate.**  
 I went to the market, I looked for tomatoes and I didn't find any.

### **OTHER EXAMPLES :**

**Nilikwenda Zanzibar jana nikarudi leo.**

I went to Zanzibar yesterday and I came back today.

**Alifika Mombasa, akajaribu kupata chumba hotelini, asipate.**

He arrived in Mombasa, he tried to find a hotel room, and didn't get any.

**Nilimwona mlimaji shambani, nikamwuliza : "Je, umepata mavuno mazuri ?" akasema : "Bwana, sikupata kitu".**

I saw a farmer on his plantation, I asked him : "Tell me, Have you got good harvests ?" and he answered : "No, I haven't got anything at all".

**Mzungu alifika Moshi, akaona mlima mkubwa sana, akamwuliza mwenyeji : "Je, mlima gani ule ?" mwenyeji akamjibu : "Huu ndio mlima wa kilimanjaro".**

The white man arrived in Moshi, he saw a very high mountain, then he asked a villager : "What's this mountain ?" the villager answered him : "This is indeed Mount Kilimanjaro".

## **2. THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE :**

### **A) CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM :**

The tense marker **-KA-** is inserted in the verbal construction of the subjunctive affirmative.

<b>SUBJECT PREFIX + KA + VERB RADICAL - E</b>
---

MODEL (Verbs of Bantu origin) :      KULETA = to bring

<b>NI-KA-LETE</b>	<b>-&gt; nikaleta</b>	and that I bring
<b>U-KA-LETE</b>	<b>-&gt; ukaleta</b>	and that you bring
<b>A-KA-LETE</b>	<b>-&gt; akaleta</b>	and that he / she brings
<b>TU-KA-LETE</b>	<b>-&gt; tukaleta</b>	and that we bring
<b>M-KA-LETE</b>	<b>-&gt; mkaleta</b>	and that you bring
<b>WA-KA-LETE</b>	<b>-&gt; wakaleta</b>	and that they bring

Verbs of Arabic origin keep their final vowel **-E, -I, or -U** :

<b>NI-KA-JARIBU</b>	<b>-&gt; nikajaribu</b>	and that I try
<b>U-KA-JITAHIDI</b>	<b>-&gt; ukajitahidi</b>	and that you make an effort
<b>A-KA-SAMEHE</b>	<b>-&gt; akasamehe</b>	and that he / she forgive

Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :

<b>NI-KA-JE</b>	<b>-&gt; nikaje</b>	and that I come
<b>U-KA-LE</b>	<b>-&gt; ukale</b>	and that you eat
<b>A-KA-ENDE</b>	<b>-&gt; akaende</b>	and that he / she goes

NOTE : By its very nature the consecutive subjunctive can only be used with classes 1 / 2 (**M-/WA-** gender) subject prefixes.

## **B) USE OF THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE :**

This tense is used in conjunction with the verb **KWENDA** :

<b>Twende tukale !</b>	or : <b>Tukale !</b>	Let's go and eat !
<b>Aende akamwite !</b>	or : <b>Akamwite !</b>	Let him / her go and call him / her !

The tense marker **-KA-** can also be used in the imperative of the second person singular. In that case it corresponds to a "sharp" order :

<b>Kaleta !</b>	Will you bring !
<b>Kamwambie !</b>	Will you tell him / her !
<b>Kajitahidi !</b>	Will you make an effort !

**Nenda** can also be used in front of the imperative in **-KA-** :

**Nenda kalete !** Will you go and bring !

#### EXAMPLES :

<b>Twende tukailete mizigo yetu hapa.</b>	Let us bring our luggage here.
<b>Nenda kamwambie alete chai.</b>	Will you tell him to bring tea.
<b>Ukanunue sigara dukani.</b>	Will you buy cigarettes at the shop.
<b>Bwana yupo ? - Yupo. - Kamwite basi !</b>	Is the boss here ? - He is here. - Call him then !

### **3. THE TELEGRAPHIC STYLE :**

The **-KA-** tense is probably the only tense (apart from the imperative) that can be used without a subject prefix, provided that the noun subject has been mentioned once in the sentence. This process is commonly used to make newspaper headlines in the daily press, but not exclusively, as will be seen in a cartoon extracted from Philip Ndunguru's comic book, **Mzee Meko**.

**(NOUN SUBJECT) KA + VERB RADICAL**

#### EXAMPLES :

**WAZIRI Kafa**  
DEATH OF MINISTER  
**NDEGE KAANGUKA BAHARINI**  
PLANE FALLS INTO SEA  
**MWIZI KAKAMATWA**  
ROBBER CAUGHT



Mzee Meko

Yule baba yako kazidi jeuri maana jana karudi kalewa sana halafu anapiga kelele hovyoy tu. Basi nikamkomesha, sikumfungulia akalala nje mpaka asubuhi na hakusema lolote.

Your father has twisted the knife in the wound, for yesterday he came back home completely drunk, then he did a lot of noise, so I refused to open him and he slept outside until morning and he didn't say anything.

## VOCABULARY

Ada	expenses	Amani	peace
Adhabu	a punishment	Arusi	a marriage
Afya	health	Elimu	teaching, education
Aibu	shame	Fitina	an argument
Ajabu	a wonder	Fulani	someone
Akina	relations	Hadithi	a story

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. Will you call the teacher !
2. Let's eat now !
3. Let them fetch the pupils !
4. Will you clean my car !
5. Would you go and read these books at the library.
6. Will you go and buy me a bottle of Coke in the shop.
7. Let us rest !
8. Let's drink coffee now !
9. If you don't know, go and ask !
10. He went to fish, he fell into the river, and couldn't get out.
11. They went hunting, killed an animal and ate it.
12. We didn't go outside, we stayed at home and watched television.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English:

1. **Nenda katazame !**
2. **Ukanilete maji, tafadhali !**
3. **Wakaende kutuletea kuni nyingi**
4. **Akanunua gari jipya, akalileta nyumbani, akalionyesha kwa kila mtu.**
5. **Niliwapa watoto maembe yangu. Wakala.**
6. **Bwana alipoingia, wale watu wakasimama wakamwamkia.**
7. **Alipolikataa shauri letu tukanyamaza.**
8. **Tembo walikuja usiku, wakauvunja ukuta wa shamba, wakaliharibu shamba lote.**
9. **Mtoto yuko wapi ? - Yuko uani. - Kamwite basi !**
10. **Usiongee na mtoto huyu, bali uende ukamwite mama yake.**
11. **Tulikwenda Hoteli ya Kati, tukafaulu kupata chumba kimoja.**
12. **Nenda kaone kama wazungu watakwenda Moshi kesho.**

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 51 - The Independent Relative Pronoun

### 1. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN "AMBA-" :

The relative pronouns "who", "which", "that", are most often present in Swahili as infixes or suffixes attached to the verb.

The relative infixes or suffixes must agree in class with the noun subject or object to which they refer.

However, there also exists an independent relative pronoun that can be used with all verbs in all tenses. This relative pronoun is **AMBA-** which can be translated in English by "who", "which", "that", or "whose", according to the situation.

**AMBA-** ends with the suffix **-O** of reference corresponding to the class of the noun with which it agrees. The relative **AMBA-** is placed between that noun and the verb that requires a relative.

Table of agreements of the Relative Pronoun **AMBA-**

GENDER / Classes	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M-/WA- (CI 1/2)	AMBA-	-YE	AMBA-	-O
M-/MI- (CI 3/4)	AMBA-	-O	AMBA-	-YO
JI-/MA- (CI 5/6)	AMBA-	-LO	AMBA-	-YO
KI-/VI- (CI 7/8)	AMBA-	-CHO	AMBA-	-VYO
N- (CI 9/10)	AMBA-	-YO	AMBA-	-ZO
U- (CI 11, 14 / 10)	AMBA-	-O	AMBA-	-ZO
KU- (CI 15)	AMBA-	-KO		
Locative Classes	AMBA-	-PO -KO -MO		

#### EXAMPLES :

**Mtu ambaye amekuja**

The person who has come

**Watu ambao wamekuja**

The people that have come

**Mti ambao ulianguka**

The tree that fell

**Magari ambayo yanafika**

The cars which arrive

**Kiti ambacho kimevunjika**

The chair which is broken

**Nguo ambayo imepasuka**

The garment which is torn

**Mahali ambako hakuna watu**

A place where there is nobody

## 2. USE OF THE INDEPENDANT RELATIVE PRONOUN :

The independant relative pronoun **AMBA-** is often used to clarify a phrase, in sentences where the relative infix attached to the verb would make it difficult to understand the message. Since one of its roles is to improve comprehension, it is increasingly used in modern Swahili, no doubt influenced by the use of the English relative pronouns.

### EXAMPLES :

**Huyu ni mtoto ambaye kesho hatakuja shule.**

Here is the child who will not come to school tomorrow.

**Neno alilosema ambalo hatutalisahau.**

The word which he said which we will not forget.

**Naliliomba jembe dogo ambalo mwalimu halitumii anapolima shamba lake.**

I asked for the small hoe that the teacher doesn't use when he cultivates his farm.

**Huyu ni yule mgonjwa ambaye mwanangu alikupa habari zake jana.**

Here is the patient about whom my son spoke to you yesterday.

**Hiki ni kitabu ambacho ndani yake niliona picha yako.** This is the book inside which I saw your photo.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Nakala</b>	a copy	<b>Nyundo</b>	a hammer
<b>Nasibu</b>	chance, a lottery	<b>Pete</b>	a ring
<b>Ngao</b>	a shield	<b>Posho</b>	a ration
<b>Ngazi</b>	a ladder	<b>Ripoti</b>	a report
<b>Njaa</b>	famine, hunger	<b>Risasi</b>	a bullet
<b>Nta</b>	wax	<b>Silaha</b>	a weapon

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. Those that came.
2. The river that we saw.
3. The book which I read.
4. The one who was late.
5. The food that we ate.
6. Those who don't know.
7. The mountain which I climbed.
8. The person who is my cook.
9. The eggs which I bought.
10. The child who broke the window.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

1. Mzee ambaye alikufa.
2. Mti ambao ulianguka.
3. Wageni ambao walifika jana.
4. Watoto ambao wanafundishwa na mwalimu yule.
5. Yule ambaye anaitwa Hamisi.
6. Dawa ambayo uliila.
7. Wale ambao watakwenda Moshi wataona mlima wa Kilimanjaro.
8. Gari ambalo nimelinunua ni safi kabisa.
9. Mizigo ambayo ilifika jana ni yangu.
10. Viazi ulaya ambavyo ulivinunua sokoni ni mbovu.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)

[Next Chapter](#)

[Table of Contents](#)





## Chapter 52 - Relative Verbal Constructions

Besides the independant relative pronoun **AMBA-**, there is in Swahili a relative particle that enters the verbal construction and that makes it possible to express the relative in the following tenses :

- Present Definite affirmative (tense marker **-NA-**).
- Simple Past affirmative (tense marker **-LI-**).
- Future affirmative (tense marker **-TAKA-**).
- A single negative tense, valid for the present, past and future.

The relative infix is made up with the **-O** of reference, that agrees in class with the noun it refers to. (See : [Chapter 31 - The "-O" of Reference.](#))

### 1. THE PRESENT DEFINITE RELATIVE :

The relative particle **-O** is placed between the tense marker **-NA-** and the verbal root.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + NA + O + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>NI-NA-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; ninayefanya</b>	that I do / who do
<b>U-NA-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; unayefanya</b>	that you do / who do
<b>A-NA-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; anayefanya</b>	that he/she does / who does
<b>TU-NA-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tunaofanya</b>	that we do / who do
<b>M-NA-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mnaofanya</b>	that you do / who do
<b>WA-NA-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; wanaofanya</b>	that they do / who do

EXAMPLES :

<b>Mtu anay<b>eb</b>aki</b>	The person <u>who</u> remains
<b>Watu wana<b>o</b>aki</b>	The people <u>who</u> remain
<b>Mti una<b>o</b>aki</b>	The tree <u>which</u> remains
<b>Miti inay<b>o</b>aki</b>	The trees <u>which</u> remain
<b>Gari linal<b>o</b>aki</b>	The car <u>which</u> remains

<b>Magari yanayobaki</b>	The cars <u>which</u> remain
<b>Kiti kinachobaki</b>	The chair <u>which</u> remains
<b>Viti vinavyobaki</b>	The chair <u>which</u> remain
<b>Nguo inayobaki</b>	The clothing <u>which</u> remains
<b>Nguo zinazobaki</b>	The clothes <u>which</u> remain

## 2. THE SIMPLE PAST RELATIVE :

The relative particle **-O** is placed between the tense marker **-LI-** and the verbal root.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + LI + O + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>NI-LI-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; niliyefanya</b>	that I made / who made
<b>U-LI-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; uliyefanya</b>	that you made / who made
<b>A-LI-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; aliyefanya</b>	that he/she made / who made
<b>TU-LI-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tuliofanya</b>	that we made / who made
<b>M-LI-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mliofanya</b>	that you made / who made
<b>WA-LI-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; waliofanya</b>	that they made / who made

## 3. THE FUTURE RELATIVE :

In future, an extra syllable **-KA-** must be inserted between the tense marker **-TA-** and the relative infix. The origin of this syllable is the verb **ku-taka** (= to want).

**SUBJECT PREFIX + TAKA + O + VERB RADICAL**

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>NI-TAKA-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; nitakayefanya</b>	that I will make / who will make
<b>U-TAKA-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; utakayefanya</b>	that you will make / who will make
<b>A-TAKA-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; atakayefanya</b>	that he/she will make / who will make
<b>TU-TAKA-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tutakaofanya</b>	that we will make / who will make
<b>M-TAKA-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; mtakaofanya</b>	that you will make / who will make

**WA-TAKA-O-FANYA** -> **watakaofanya** that they will make / who will make

#### EXAMPLES :

**Wageni watakaofika kesho watakwenda Zanzibar.**

The guests who will arrive tomorrow will go to Zanzibar.

**Miti itakaoangushwa itatumiwa hapa.**

The trees that will be felled will be used here.

**Gari nitakalolinunua litakuwa ghali sana.**

The car that I will buy will be very expensive.

**Mwanamke nitakayemwoa lazima apendeze.**

The woman that I will marry will have to be attractive.



#### Chakubanga

- Haya ni bei gani mananasi yako ?
- Mananasi siuzi ila ni zawadi kwa yule atakayenunua mpini ya jembe !
- So how much are your pineapples ?
- The pineapples I don't sell, but they are a gift for the one who will buy a hoe handle !

#### 4. THE NEGATIVE RELATIVE :

The negative form of the relative doesn't include any tense marker and can be used as well for the present, past and future. It is formed by inserting the negative infix **-SI-** between the subject prefix and the relative infix, which is in turn followed by the verbal root.

**SUBJECT PREFIX + SI + O + VERB RADICAL**

**MODEL :** **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

**NI-SI-YE-FANYA** -> **nisiyefanya**

I who do not make

**U-SI-YE-FANYA** -> **usiyefanya**

you who do not make

<b>A-SI-YE-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; asiye<span style="text-decoration: underline;">f</span>anya</b>	he/she who does not make
<b>TU-SI-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; tusio<span style="text-decoration: underline;">f</span>anya</b>	we who do not make
<b>M-SI-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; msio<span style="text-decoration: underline;">f</span>anya</b>	you who do not make
<b>WA-SI-O-FANYA</b>	<b>-&gt; wasio<span style="text-decoration: underline;">f</span>anya</b>	they who do not make

EXAMPLES :

<b>Mtu asi<span style="text-decoration: underline;">y</span>ebaki</b>	The person <u>who</u> does/did/will not remain
<b>Watu wasio<span style="text-decoration: underline;">b</span>aki</b>	The people <u>who</u> do/did/will not remain
<b>Mti usio<span style="text-decoration: underline;">f</span>aa</b>	A tree <u>which</u> is/was/will not (be) appropriate
<b>Miti isio<span style="text-decoration: underline;">f</span>aa</b>	Trees <u>which</u> are/were/will not (be) appropriate
<b>Gari lisi<span style="text-decoration: underline;">l</span>okuja</b>	The car <u>that</u> does/did/will not come
<b>Magari yasi<span style="text-decoration: underline;">y</span>okuja</b>	The cars <u>that</u> do/did/will not come
<b>Chakula kisich<span style="text-decoration: underline;">o</span>tosha</b>	The food <u>which</u> is/was/will not (be) enough
<b>Viti visiv<span style="text-decoration: underline;">y</span>ovunjika</b>	Chairs <u>that</u> are/were/will not (be) broken
<b>Nguo isio<span style="text-decoration: underline;">f</span>uliwa</b>	A garment <u>which</u> is/was/will not (be) washed
<b>Nguo zisiz<span style="text-decoration: underline;">o</span>pasiwa</b>	clothes <u>which</u> are/were/will not (be) ironed

**5. THE RELATIVE AS A PRONOUN OBJECT :**

Compare :               The child who reads a book  
                               The book that the child reads

In both cases, "the child" is the subject of "read" ; but in the 1st sentence, the relative pronoun, which is the subject of the verb, refers to the child, while in the 2nd sentence, the relative pronoun, which is the complement object, refers to the book.

To translate the 2nd sentence in Swahili, two conditions must be observed : the relative infix must agree with "book", and an object infix must be inserted in the verbal construction.

EXAMPLES :

<b>Mtoto ali<span style="text-decoration: underline;">y</span>esoma kitabu</b>	The child who read a book
<b>Kitabu alich<span style="text-decoration: underline;">o</span>kisoma mtoto</b>	The book that the child read
<b>Mzee aliy<span style="text-decoration: underline;">e</span>lima shamba</b>	The old man who cultivated the field
<b>Shamba alil<span style="text-decoration: underline;">o</span>lilima mzee</b>	The field that the old man cultivated
<b>Mimi nisi<span style="text-decoration: underline;">y</span>esoma vitabu</b>	I who do/did not read books
<b>Vitabu nisiv<span style="text-decoration: underline;">y</span>ovisoma</b>	The books that I do/did not read

## VOCABULARY

<b>Pamba</b>	cotton	<b>Sumu</b>	a poison, a toxin
<b>Pembe</b>	a tusk	<b>Sura</b>	figure, appearance
<b>Pua</b>	the nose	<b>Taarifa</b>	a report, a bulletin
<b>Pumzi</b>	breath	<b>Tofauti</b>	a difference
<b>Raha</b>	joy	<b>Tumbako</b>	tobacco
<b>Siki</b>	vinegar	<b>Vifaa</b>	equipment

Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1** : Translate into Swahili :

1. The knife that I gave you.
2. The books which I bought.
3. The tree that fell.
4. The house which will fall.
5. The fruit which were collected
6. The young people who seek work.
7. People who lived here.
8. The pupils who will speak Swahili.
9. The shop which sells various equipment.
10. The old man who sells tobacco at the market.
11. The cook who was fired from his job.
12. The guests who arrived yesterday.

**EXERCISE 2** : Translate into English :

1. Mwanafunzi aliyesoma vitavu vingi alipewa zawadi.
2. Wale wanaosoma kiswahili watakwenda Kenya mwaka ujao.
3. Mimi nisiyejua kiingereza, lazima niseme kiswahili.
4. Usivae nguo yasiyopigwa pasi.
5. Mpe mzee kiti kisichovunjika.
6. Wanafunzi watakaofaulu mtihani watapewa cheti.
7. Mpe maskini chakula kinachobaki.



8. Huyu ni mtu anayetafuta kazi.
9. Wageni waliofika jana watakwenda kesho Zanzibar.
10. Mti mmoja ulioanguka umeharibu nyumba yangu.
11. Miti yote iliyoanguka uani itatumika kwa kujenga nyumba mpya.
12. Msichana nitakayemwoa lazima awe mzuri sana.

---

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 53 - The General Relative

The General Relative is a Present Indefinite Relative. It is used in sentences of the type :

- "Farmers who cultivate plants."
- "Cows which eat grass."

### 1. AFFIRMATIVE FORM :

This specialized relative tense does not have a tense marker. the subject prefix is directly followed by the verb radical, while a relative suffix (-O of reference) is attached at the end of the end of the verb. This relative suffix agrees in class to the noun it refers to. (See : [Chapter 31 - The "-O" of Reference](#).)

#### SUBJECT PREFIX + VERB RADICAL + O

MODEL : **KUFANYA** = to make, to do

<b>NI-FANYA-YE</b>	<b>-&gt; nifanyaye</b>	I who make
<b>U-FANYA-YE</b>	<b>-&gt; ufanyaye</b>	you who make
<b>A-FANYA-YE</b>	<b>-&gt; afanyaye</b>	he / she who makes
<b>TU-FANYA-O</b>	<b>-&gt; tufanyao</b>	we who make
<b>M-FANYA-O</b>	<b>-&gt; mfanyao</b>	you who make
<b>WA-FANYA-O</b>	<b>-&gt; wafanyao</b>	they who make

OTHER MODELS : **KUFAA** = TO BE CONVENIENT

GENDER / Classes	EXAMPLES	TRANSLATION
<b>M- (Class 1)</b> <b>WA- (Class 2)</b>	<b>mtu afaaye</b> <b>watu wafaao</b>	the person who is suitable people who are suitable
<b>M- (Class 3)</b> <b>MI- (Class 4)</b>	<b>mti ufaao</b> <b>miti ifaayo</b>	a tree which is suitable trees which are suitable
<b>JI- (Class 5)</b> <b>MA- (Class 6)</b>	<b>gari lifaalo</b> <b>magari yafaayo</b>	a car which is suitable cars which are suitable

<b>KI- (Class 7)</b> <b>VI- (Class 8)</b>	<b>kiti kifaacho</b> <b>viti vifaavyo</b>	a chair which is suitable chairs which are suitable
<b>N- (Class 9)</b> <b>N- (Class 10)</b>	<b>nguo ifaayo</b> <b>nguo zifaazo</b>	a garment which is suitable clothes which are suitable
<b>U- (Class 11)</b> <b>plural (CI 10)</b>	<b>uma ufaao</b> <b>nyuma zifaazo</b>	a fork which is suitable forks which are suitable

**NOTES :**

- Verbs of Arabic origin behave like ordinary verbs :  
**Nifikiriye** = I who think  
**Ajibuye** = he / she who answers
- Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive prefix **KU-** :  
**Nijaye** = I who come  
**Tulao** = we who eat  
**Siku zijazo** = coming days

**EXAMPLES :**

<b>Mwezi ujao</b>	Next month
<b>Mwaka ujao</b>	Next year
<b>Wiki ijayo</b>	Next week
<b>Alhamisi ijayo</b>	Next Thursday
<b>Mtoto asomaye</b>	The child who learns
<b>Shamba litufaalo</b>	A plantation that suits <u>us</u>
<b>Mwalimu afundishaye watoto wao</b>	The teacher who teaches these children
<b>Siku zijazo zitakuwa na mvua nyingi</b>	The coming days will be very rainy
<b>Nilifika mwaka jana, nitaondoka mwaka ujao</b>	I arrived last year, I will go next year
<b>Mkutano utanza Jumanne ijayo</b>	The meeting will start next Tuesday

**2. NEGATIVE FORM :**

The General Relative has no negative form of its own. It is the General Negative which is naturally used since it does not include any tense markers either. (See : [Chapter 52 - The Relative Verbal Construction.](#))

**3. PARTICULAR CASES : KUWA & KUWA NA :**

The verbs **KUWA** (= to be) and **KUWA NA** (= to have) possess a particular relative construction that uses the verbal roots **LI** in the affirmative and **SI** in the negative.

PRESENT - AFFIRMATIVE FORM

<b>KUWA descriptive</b>	<b>KUWA locative</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>NILIYE</b>	<b>NILIYEPO</b>	<b>I who am</b>
<b>ULIYE</b>	<b>ULIYEPO</b>	<b>you who are</b>
<b>ALIYE</b>	<b>ALIYEPO</b>	<b>he / she who is</b>
<b>TULIO</b>	<b>TULIOPO</b>	<b>we who are</b>
<b>MLIO</b>	<b>MLIOPO</b>	<b>you who are</b>
<b>WALIO</b>	<b>WALIOPO</b>	<b>they who are</b>

PRESENT - NEGATIVE FORM

<b>KUWA descriptive</b>	<b>KUWA locative</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>NISIYE</b>	<b>NISIYEPO</b>	<b>I who is not</b>
<b>USIYE</b>	<b>USIYEPO</b>	<b>you who are not</b>
<b>ASIYE</b>	<b>ASIYEPO</b>	<b>he / she who is not</b>
<b>TUSIO</b>	<b>TUSIOPO</b>	<b>we who are not</b>
<b>MSIO</b>	<b>MSIOPO</b>	<b>you who are not</b>
<b>WASIO</b>	<b>WASIOPO</b>	<b>they who are not</b>

The verbs **KUWA** et **KUWA NA** may also be conjugated in the Simple Past and the Future affirmative. Here is the conjugation for the 3rd person singular and plural :

SIMPLE PAST - AFFIRMATIVE FORM

<b>KUWA descriptive</b>	<b>KUWA locative</b>	<b>Translation</b>
<b>ALIYEKUWA</b>	<b>ALIYEKUWAPO</b>	<b>he / she who was</b>
<b>WALIOKUWA</b>	<b>WALIOKUWAPO</b>	<b>they who were</b>

FUTURE - AFFIRMATIVE FORM

<b>KUWA descriptive</b>	<b>KUWA locative</b>	<b>translation</b>
<b>ATAKAYEKUWA</b>	<b>ATAKAYEKUWAPO</b>	<b>he / she who will be</b>
<b>WATAKAOKUWA</b>	<b>WATAKAOKUWAPO</b>	<b>they who will be</b>

To conjugate the verb **KUWA NA** (= avoir), we simply take up the conjugation of the verb **KUWA** descriptive and add the word **NA** after the verb.

EXAMPLES :

<b>Wanafunzi walio na vitabu.</b>	The pupils who have books.
<b>Vitabu walivyo navyo.</b>	The books that they have.
<b>Vitavu walivyokuwa navyo.</b>	The books that they had.
<b>Vitabu watakavyokuwa navyo.</b>	The books that they will have.
<b>Kwa wasiwasi aliokuwa nao, hakusema neno.</b>	Because of the doubt that he had, he didn't say a word.
<b>Haya ni maneno yasiyo na maana.</b>	These are words without meaning.
<b>Huoni mzigo nilio nao hapa ?</b>	You do not see the luggage that I have here ?
<b>Hakuna masika yasiyo na mbu.</b>	There is no rain season without mosquitoes.

PROVERB :

<b>Akufaaye kwa dhiki ndiye rafiki</b>
--

<b>VOCABULARY</b>
-------------------

<b>Ku-changanyika</b>	to mix	<b>Ku-pasa</b>	to be appropriate
<b>Ku-danganya</b>	to mislead	<b>Ku-piga kura</b>	to vote
<b>Ku-gawa</b>	to divide	<b>Ku-pindua</b>	to overturn
<b>Ku-kagua</b>	to inspect	<b>Ku-shtaki</b>	to accuse
<b>Ku-kodi</b>	to rent	<b>Ku-tawala</b>	to govern
<b>Ku-kwama</b>	to break down	<b>Ku-tegemea</b>	to depend

## Mots Croisés

## EXERCISES

**EXERCISE 1 :** Translate into Swahili :

1. I will go to England next year.
2. A child who studies is a child who will succeed in life.
3. I think that the coming month will be very rainy.
4. The examination will begin next Thursday.
5. I seek somebody who sells elephant tusks.
6. Is there anybody here who speaks French ?
7. People who vote are not numerous.
8. I seek to rent a house which is convenient for us.
9. The teachers who teach these children are Europeans.
10. We will see each other next week.

**EXERCISE 2 :** Translate into English :

1. Hawa ni wanafunzi wapendao kusoma.
2. Usiniambie maneno yasiyo na maana.
3. Nitakulipa mshahara upasao.
4. Nisaidie na masanduku niliyo nayo.
5. Kama ujuavyo, ndovu wameharibu mavuno yetu.
6. Shida zetu ni zile zile uzijuazo.
7. Nipe vifaa zilizopo kabatini.
8. Si rahisi kupata vyatu vifaavyo.
9. Ninatafuta vibarua walimao vizuri.
10. Mtoto aliye hodari zaidi atapewa zawadi.

[Previous Chapter](#)[Next Chapter](#)[Table of Contents](#)



## Chapter 54 - Auxiliary Verbs

Apart from the verb **KUWA** (= to be) which is employed in the formation of compound tenses, a certain number of Swahili verbs can be used as auxiliaries in front of a second verb which is generally, although not exclusively, conjugated in the infinitive. These verbs employed as auxiliaries add a precision on the way the action takes place.

### 1. KWISHA :

The auxiliary **KWISHA** (= to end, to finish) shows that an action has already taken place. That is why this auxiliary is usually conjugated in the Past Perfect tense.

- In the affirmative, the verbal construction with **KWISHA** has undergone a significant evolution, since beginning from two distinct verbal elements, we have arrived today at a unique contracted verbal form where the particle **-SHA-** simply reinforces the tense marker **-ME-** of the Past Perfect.

#### EXAMPLE :

2 distinct verbs :	<b>Nimekwisha kupata chumba.</b>	I have already got a room.
The 2nd verb drops its <b>KU-</b> :	<b>Nimekwisha pata chumba.</b>	I have already got a room.
The 2 verbs fuse together :	<b>Nimeshapata chumba.</b>	I have already got a room.

- In the negative form, we simply use the Past Perfect negative :

#### EXAMPLE :

<b>Sijapata chumba</b> or :	<b>Sijapata chumba bado</b>	I haven't got a room yet.
-----------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------

- In a relative clause, the tense marker **-MESHA-** can be kept thanks to the use of the independant relative pronoun. Alternatively, we can use **KWISHA + Verb radical** in the Simple Past relative :

#### EXAMPLE :

Relative pronoun :	<b>Mimi ambaye nimeshapata chumba.</b>	I who have already got a room.
Simple Past relative :	<b>Mimi niliyekwisha pata chumba.</b>	I who have already got a room.

- KWISHA** can also be used in the **-KI-** tense and then means "when" or "if" :

#### EXAMPLE :

<b>Nikiisha pata chumba, nitaanza safari yangu</b>	When I have got a room, I'll start my journey to
--	--

Zanzibar.

Zanzibar.

## 2. KUJA :

The auxiliary **KUJA** (= to come) shows that an action will be carried out in the future. It is therefore conjugated in the Future and is followed by a 2nd verb in the infinitive.

### EXAMPLES :

**Nitakapopata mshahara, nitakwenda kununua nguo mpya.**

When I get a salary, I will go to buy new clothes.

**Tukijifunza kwa bidii, tutakuja kusema kiswahili safi.**

If we study hard, we will succeed in speaking a good Swahili.

## 3. KWENDA :

the auxiliary **KWENDA** (= to go) indicates that an action is on the point of being carried out. It is usually followed by a passive verb in the infinitive.

- The auxiliary **KWENDA** is conjugated in the Past Perfect :

### EXAMPLES :

**Mgonjwa amekwenda kupasuliwa.**

The patient is to be operated.

**Mwanafunzi amekwenda kuitwa.**

The pupil has just been called.

**Chakula kimekwenda kuletwa.**

Food is being brought.

- In the Habitual Present, **HUENDA** carries the notion of "maybe" :

### EXAMPLES :

**Huenda dereva akapata shida njiani.**

Maybe the driver has got a problem on the road.

**Huenda yeye ni mgonjwa.**

Maybe he is sick.

## 4. KUPATA :

The auxiliary **KUPATA** expresses the opportunity or the possibility of carrying out something.

- **KUPATA** conjugated in the future or in the imperative is followed by a second verb in the infinitive.



EXAMPLES :**Fungua dirisha ili hewa safi ipate kuingia.**

Open the window to let fresh air in.

**Tufanye haraka tupate kumaliza mapema.**

Let's hurry so that we can finish early.

**Nitakapopata likizo, nitapata kwenda safari.**

When I get holidays, I'll be able to go on a journey.

- **KUPATA** conjugated in the present indefinite is used to express "about, approximately". Three different verbal constructions can be used :

CI 9 subject prefix YA-		Prefix agreeing with the subject	General Relative
1.	Yapata watu mia	Wapata watu mia	Watu wapatao mia
2.	Yapata vitabu vinane	Vyapata vitabu vinane	Vitabu vipatavyo vinane
3.	Yapata meza ishirini	Zapata meza ishirini	Meza zipatazo ishirini

1. About a hundred people.

2. About 8 books.

3. About twenty tables.

**5. -NGALI :**

**-NGALI** which is already known as the tense marker of the Past Conditional (See : [Chapter 47 - The Past Conditional](#)) can also be used as an autonomous auxiliary verb. It can be translated by : "always, still". **-NGALI** is usually conjugated in the Present Indefinite, while the second verb is in the Present Definite or in the **-KI-** tense.

EXAMPLES :**Tungali tunangoja.**

We are still waiting.

**Mwalimu angali ana wasiwasi.**

The teacher still has doubts.

**Angalipo nyumbani.**

He / she is still at home.

**Maji yangaliko kisimani.**

there is still water in the well.

However, there is a much more simple way of expressing the same, with the adverb **bado** :

**Bado ni mtoto.**

He / she is still a child.

**Maji bado yako kisimani.**

There is still water in the well.

**Yumo nyumbani bado.**

He / she is still at home.



## Chapter 55 - Compound Tenses

Although the mastership of compound tenses is not essential to speak correct Swahili at a basic level, yet it is preferable to know the existence of these tenses and to be able to recognize their forms as well as the meaning attached to them. This will be the topic of this last chapter.

### 1. VERBAL CONSTRUCTION :

Compound tenses in Swahili are always made up of two verbs :

- The first verb is the auxiliary verb **KUWA** = to be.
- Followed by a second verb which is the lexical verb.

**Subj. Prefix + Tense + KUWA // Subj. Prefix + Tense + VERB**

Both verbs must carry the subject prefix corresponding to the noun they refer to. In a negative sentence, it is usually the auxiliary verb only which is in the negative, while the lexical verb remains in the affirmative.

Tense combinations are quite numerous. We shall see only the most common here. For a foreigner, it is often difficult to grasp all the minute shades of meaning implied in the use of the compound tenses, all the more since they are translated roughly the same way in English.

### 2. PRESENT COMPOUND TENSES :

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-NA-PO-KUWA	NI-NA-FANYA NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	when I make when I am making when I have made

The tense marker **-NA-** of the Present Definite can only be used with **KUWA** carrying the locative relative **PO**, to indicate when the action takes place :

**Mtoto anapokuwa akicheza.**

When the child is playing.

**Anapokuwa anatengeneza gari lake.**

When he repairs his car.

**Anapokuwa amemaliza kazi.**

When he has finished work.

**3. PAST COMPOUND TENSES :**

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-LI-KUWA NI-KA-WA	NI-NA-FANYA NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I made I was making I had done

EXAMPLES :

**Tulipokuwa Ulaya tulikuwa tunatumia fedha za kigeni.** When we were in Europe we used foreign currency.

**Watoto walikuwa wakicheza.** The children were playing.

**Tulikuwa tumekula.** We had eaten.

The Simple Past in **-LI-** of the auxiliary verb can be replaced by the **-KA-** tense :

**Masimba walikuwa barabarani, kwa hivyo tuliacha kuendesha, tukawa tunawaangalia tu.** There were lions on the road, therefore we ceased driving and we watched them.

**Alikimbia hata akawa amechoka.** He / she ran until he / she was tired.

**4. FUTURE COMPOUND TENSES :**

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-TA-KUWA	NI-NA-FANYA NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I will make I will be making I will have done

EXAMPLES :

**Mtoto atakuwa anacheza.** The child will play.

**Mwaka ujao tutakuwa tukikaa katika nyumba yetu mpya.** Next year we will be staying in our new house.

**Tutakuwa tumeshiba kabla ya kumaliza chakula.** We will be satiated before finishing the meal.

**5. CONDITIONAL COMPOUND TENSES :**

AUXILIARY VERB	LEXICAL VERB	Translation
NI-NGE-KUWA	NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I would be making
NI-NGALI-KUWA	NI-KI-FANYA NI-ME-FANYA	I would have been making

EXAMPLES :

**Angekuwa akienda mjini ningemwomba lifti.**

If he was going to town, I would ask him for a lift.

**Ungekuwa umesikia redio, ungeweza kuniambia habari za leo.**

If you had listened to the radio, you could give me today's news.

**Angalikuwa akisoma kwa mwaka mzima, angalifaulu mtihani wake.**

If he had studied all the year, he would have passed his exam.

**Ungalikuwa umepokea barua yangu, ungalijua kwamba nilitazamia kufika leo.**

If you had received my letter, you would have known I was coming today.

<b>6. GENERAL NOTES :</b>
---------------------------

**A. USE OF A RELATIVE :**

When a relative is employed with a compound tense, the relative infix is inserted in the auxiliary verb :

**Mtoto aliyekuwa amelala.**

The child who was sleeping.

**Alipokuwa amemaliza kazi yake, akarudi kwao.**

When he had finished his work, he came back home.

**Hao ni wezi waliokuwa wanaiba huku mjini.**

These are the thieves who were robbing downtown.

**B. USE OF AN OBJECT INFIX :**

When a complement object is used with a compound tense, the object infix is inserted in the lexical verb :

**Nilikuwa nimekisoma.**

I had read it.

**Niliwapa chakula nilichokuwa nimekipika asubuhi.**

I gave them the food I had cooked this morning.

<a href="#">Previous Chapter</a>	<a href="#">Table of Contents</a>
----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

